

# Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Continentalclusters A.08.00

HP Part Number: 698669-001  
Published: February 2013



## Legal Notices

© Copyright 2013 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Confidential computer software. Valid license from HP required for possession, use, or copying. Consistent with FAR 12.211 and 12.212, Commercial Computer Software, Computer Software Documentation, and Technical Data for Commercial Items are licensed to the U.S. Government under vendor's standard commercial license.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice. The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein must be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Intel®, Itanium®, registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States or other countries.

Oracle ® is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation.

UNIX® is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through The Open Group.

---

# Contents

1	Introduction.....	8
2	Building the Continentalclusters configuration.....	10
	Creating the Serviceguard clusters at both the sites .....	10
	Easy deployment method.....	10
	Traditional deployment method.....	10
	Setting up security.....	11
	Creating data replication between the clusters.....	12
	Using array based physical replication supported by Metrocluster.....	12
	Using any other array based physical replication technology.....	13
	Using software based logical replication.....	13
	Creating volume groups or disk groups on the replicated disks if required.....	13
	Creating and Exporting LVM Volume Groups .....	14
	Creating VxVM Disk Groups.....	15
	Installing and Configuring an application in the primary site.....	15
	Installing and configuring a redundant copy of the application in the recovery site .....	15
	Configuring the Continentalclusters primary and recovery packages.....	15
	Configuring primary and recovery packages as modular packages when using Continuous Access P9000 or XP.....	16
	Configuring the primary and recovery packages as modular packages when using Continuous Access EVA.....	17
	Configuring the primary and recovery packages as modular packages when using EMC SRDF....	19
	Configuring the primary and recovery packages as modular packages when using 3PAR Remote Copy.....	20
	Configuring the monitor package.....	21
	Creating a Continentalclusters configuration.....	22
	Cluster information.....	22
	Recovery groups.....	23
	Monitoring definitions.....	24
	Checking and applying the Continentalclusters configuration.....	25
	Starting the Continentalclusters monitor package.....	26
	Testing the Continentalclusters.....	26
	Testing Individual Packages.....	26
	Testing Continentalclusters Operations.....	26
3	Performing a recovery operation in Continentalclusters environment.....	29
	Performing recovery in case of disaster.....	29
	Receiving notification.....	29
	Verifying that recovery is required.....	29
	Preparing the storage manually in the recovery cluster.....	29
	Using cmrecovercl to recover the recovery groups.....	30
	Previewing the storage preparation.....	30
	Recovering the entire cluster after a cluster alarm.....	30
	Recovering the entire cluster after a cluster alert.....	31
	Recovering a single cluster in an N-1 configuration.....	31
	Viewing the Continentalclusters status.....	31
4	Restoring disaster recovery cluster after a disaster.....	32
	Retaining the original roles for primary and recovery cluster.....	32
	Switching the Primary and Recovery Cluster Roles.....	32
	Switching the Primary and Recovery Cluster Roles using cmswitchconcl.....	33
	Creating a new Primary Cluster.....	34
	Creating a new Recovery Cluster.....	35

<b>5 Disaster recovery rehearsal in Continentalclusters.....</b>	<b>36</b>
Overview of Disaster Recovery rehearsal.....	36
Configuring Continentalclusters Disaster Recovery rehearsal.....	36
Configuring maintenance mode in Continentalclusters.....	36
Overview of maintenance mode feature.....	36
Setting up the file system for Continentalclusters state directory.....	36
Configuring the monitor package to mount the file system from the shared disk.....	37
Configuring Continentalclusters rehearsal packages.....	38
Modifying Continentalclusters configuration.....	38
Precautions to be taken while performing DR Rehearsal.....	39
Client access IP address at recovery cluster.....	39
Cluster role switch during rehearsal.....	39
Performing Disaster Recovery rehearsal in Continentalclusters.....	39
Cleanup of secondary mirror copy.....	41
Recovering the primary cluster disaster during DR Rehearsal.....	41
Limitations of DR rehearsal feature.....	42
<b>6 Configuring complex workloads in a Continentalclusters environment using SADTA.....</b>	<b>43</b>
Setting up replication.....	44
Configuring the primary cluster with a single site.....	44
Configuring the recovery cluster with a single site.....	45
Setting up the complex workload in the primary cluster.....	45
Configuring the storage device for the complex workload at the primary cluster.....	45
Configuring the storage device using CFS or SG SMS CVM.....	45
Configuring the storage device using Veritas CVM.....	46
Configuring the storage device using SLVM.....	47
Configuring the complex workload at the primary cluster.....	48
Configuring complex workload packages to use CFS.....	48
Configuring complex workload packages to use CVM.....	48
Configuring complex workload packages to use SLVM.....	48
Halting the complex workload in the primary cluster.....	48
Configuring the Site Controller Package in the primary cluster.....	49
Configuring the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the primary cluster.....	49
Suspending the replication to the recovery cluster.....	50
Setting up redundant complex workload in the recovery cluster.....	51
Configuring the storage device for the complex workload at the recovery cluster.....	51
Configuring the storage device using CFS or SG SMS CVM.....	51
Configuring the storage device using Veritas CVM.....	51
Configuring the storage device using SLVM.....	52
Configuring the identical complex workload stack at the recovery cluster.....	52
Configuring the Site Controller package in the recovery cluster.....	52
Configuring Site Safety Latch dependencies.....	52
Resuming the replication to the recovery cluster.....	53
Configuring Continentalclusters.....	53
<b>7 Administering Continentalclusters.....</b>	<b>54</b>
Checking the status of clusters, nodes, and packages.....	54
Notes on Packages in Continentalclusters.....	56
Startup and Switching Characteristics.....	57
Network Attributes.....	57
Enabling and disabling maintenance mode.....	57
Recovering a cluster when the storage array or disks fail.....	58
Starting a recovery package forcefully.....	58
Adding or Removing a Node from a Cluster.....	59

Adding a Recovery Group to Continentalclusters.....	59
Modifying a package in a recovery group.....	60
Modifying Continentalclusters configuration.....	60
Removing a recovery group from the Continentalclusters.....	60
Removing a rehearsal package from a recovery group.....	61
Modifying a recovery group with a new rehearsal package.....	61
Changing monitoring definitions.....	61
Behavior of Serviceguard commands in Continentalclusters.....	61
Verifying the status of Continentalclusters daemons.....	62
Renaming the Continentalclusters.....	62
Deleting the Continentalclusters configuration.....	63
Checking the Version Number of the Continentalclusters Executables.....	63
Maintaining the data replication environment.....	63
Maintaining Continuous Access P9000 and XP Data Replication Environment.....	63
Resynchronizing the device group.....	63
Using the pairresync command.....	64
Additional points .....	64
Maintaining Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA P6000 data replication environment.....	65
Continuous Access EVA Link Suspend and Resume Modes.....	65
Maintaining EMC SRDF data replication environment.....	66
Normal Startup.....	66
Maintaining 3PAR Remote Copy data replication environment.....	66
Viewing the Remote Copy volume group details.....	66
Remote Copy Link Failure and Resume Modes.....	67
Restoring replication after a failover.....	67
Administering Continentalclusters using SADTA configuration.....	67
Maintaining a Node.....	67
Maintaining the Site.....	67
Maintaining Site Controller Package.....	68
Moving the Site Controller Package to a Node in the local cluster.....	68
Deleting the Site Controller Package.....	69
Starting a Complex Workload.....	69
Shutting Down a Complex Workload.....	70
Moving a Complex Workload to the Recovery Cluster.....	70
Restarting a Failed Site Controller Package.....	70
<b>8 Troubleshooting Continentalclusters.....</b>	<b>71</b>
Reviewing Messages and Log Files.....	71
Reviewing Messages and Log Files of Monitoring Daemon.....	71
Reviewing Messages and Log Files of Packages in Recovery Groups.....	71
Reviewing Logs of Notification Component.....	71
Troubleshooting Continentalclusters Error Messages.....	71
<b>A Migrating to Continentalclusters A.08.00.....</b>	<b>74</b>
<b>B Continentalclusters Worksheets.....</b>	<b>75</b>
Data Center Worksheet .....	75
Recovery Group Worksheet .....	75
Cluster Event Worksheet .....	76
Recovery Checklist.....	76
Site Aware Disaster Tolerant architecture configuration worksheet .....	77
Continentalclusters Site configuration.....	77
Replication configuration.....	77
CRS Sub-cluster configuration – using CFS.....	78
RAC database configuration.....	79
Site Controller package configuration.....	80

C Configuration file parameters for Continentalclusters.....	82
D Continentalclusters Command and Daemon Reference.....	85
E Package attributes.....	88
Package Attributes for Continentalcluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP.....	88
Package Attributes for Continentalcluster with Continuous Access EVA.....	95
Package Attributes for Continentalcluster with EMC SRDF.....	97
F Legacy packages.....	100
Migrating complex workloads using Legacy SG SMS CVM/CFS Packages to Modular SG SMS CVM/CFS Packages with minimal downtime.....	100
Migrating legacy to modular packages.....	100
Migrating legacy monitor package.....	100
Migrating legacy style primary and recovery packages to modular packages.....	101
Migrating legacy style primary and recovery packages to modular packages when using Continuous Access P9000 and XP.....	101
Migrating legacy style primary and recovery packages to modular packages using Continuous access EVA.....	102
Migrating legacy style primary and recovery packages to modular packages using EMC SRDF.....	103
Configuring legacy packages.....	104
Configuring the monitor package in legacy style.....	104
Configuring primary and recovery packages as legacy packages when using Continuous Access P9000 and XP.....	105
Configuring primary and recovery packages as legacy packages when using Continuous Access EVA.....	107
Configuring primary and recovery packages as legacy packages when using EMC SRDF....	109
Configuring storage devices for complex workload.....	111
Configuring the storage device for the complex workload at the Source Disk Site using SG SMS CFS or CVM.....	111
Configuring the storage device for complex workload at the target disk site using SG SMS CFS or CVM.....	112
G Configuration rules for using modular style packages in Continentalclusters...	114
H Sample Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file.....	115
Section 1 of the Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file.....	115
Section 2 of the Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file.....	116
Section 3 of the Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file.....	118
# Section 1: Cluster Information.....	121
I Sample input and output files for cmswitchconcl command.....	123
J Configuring Oracle RAC in Continentalclusters in Legacy style.....	125
Support for Oracle RAC instances in a Continentalclusters environment .....	125
Configuring the environment for Continentalclusters to support Oracle RAC.....	126
Serviceguard/Serviceguard extension for RAC and Oracle Clusterware configuration.....	131
Initial startup of Oracle RAC instance in a Continentalclusters environment.....	132
Failover of Oracle RAC instances to the recovery site.....	132
Failback of Oracle RAC instances after a failover.....	134
Rehearsing Oracle RAC databases in Continentalclusters.....	135
K Configuring Oracle RAC database with ASM in Continentalclusters using SADTA.....	136
Setting up replication.....	137
Configure a primary cluster with a single site.....	137
Configure a recovery cluster with a single site.....	138

Installing and configuring Oracle Clusterware.....	138
Installing Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) software.....	138
Creating the RAC database with ASM in the primary cluster.....	138
Configuring the ASM disk group in the primary cluster.....	138
Configuring SGeRAC toolkit packages for the ASM disk group in the primary cluster.....	139
Creating the Oracle RAC database in the primary cluster.....	139
Configuring and testing the RAC MNP stack in the primary cluster.....	139
Halting the RAC database in the primary cluster.....	139
Suspending the replication to the recovery cluster.....	140
Configuring the identical ASM instance in the recovery cluster.....	140
Configuring the identical RAC database in the recovery cluster.....	141
Configuring the Site Controller package in the primary cluster.....	142
Configuring the Site Safety Latch dependencies at the primary cluster.....	142
Configuring the Site Controller package in the recovery cluster.....	143
Configuring the Site Safety Latch dependencies at the recovery cluster.....	143
Database with ASM in the Continentalclusters in the primary cluster.....	144
<b>Glossary.....</b>	<b>145</b>
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>150</b>

---

# 1 Introduction

Continentalclusters provides disaster recovery between multiple Serviceguard clusters. A single cluster can act as the recovery for a set of primary clusters. It is also possible to have two clusters act as recovery for each other. This allows increased utilization of hardware resources.

Continentalclusters eliminates the cluster itself as a single point of failure. There is no distance limitation as the cluster hearbeats are restricted to single clusters and the data replication latency can be removed using asynchronous replication.

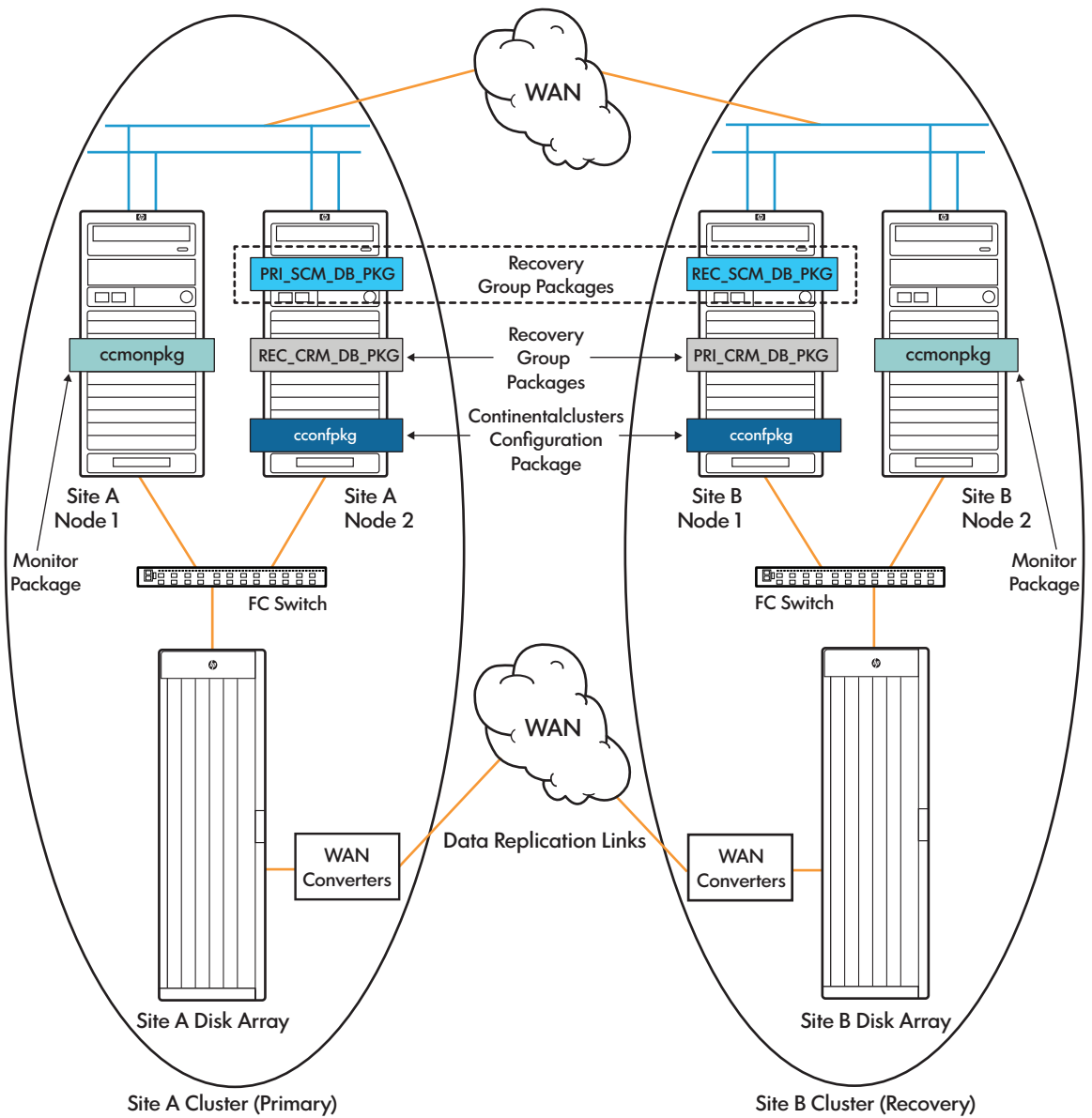
The Continentalclusters monitoring mechanism periodically verifies the health of the primary clusters that are defined in its configuration. When it detects a change, the mechanism can issue notifications. The notification message and type are configurable. Email, SNMP, OPC and syslog are the examples of notifications that are supported in Continentalclusters.

The recovery steps to recover an application in a Continentalclusters is completely automated, but the recovery process must be initiated manually. This is termed as "Push-Button" recovery. After the administrator confirms the disaster and runs the recovery command, the recovery process does not require further manual input.

Figure 1 shows a basic configuration where Site A cluster is defined as a primary cluster and Site B cluster is defined as a recovery cluster.



Figure 1 Sample Continentalclusters Configuration



For more information about Continentalclusters concepts, see *Understanding and Designing Serviceguard Disaster Recovery Architectures* manual available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

---

## 2 Building the Continentalclusters configuration

To build a Continentalclusters configuration, complete the following list of steps:

1. Create a Serviceguard cluster at both the data center sites.
2. Establish the security credentials for Continentalclusters operation.
3. Create data replication between the two clusters.
4. If required, then create the volume groups or disk groups on the replicated disks.
5. Install and configure an application in the primary site using the replicated disks.
6. Install and configure a redundant copy of the application in the recovery site using the same replicated disks.
7. Package the primary and the recovery copy of the applications using Serviceguard and Continentalclusters package modules.
8. Configure a monitor package in the recovery cluster.
9. Specify the clusters, the cluster events with its notifications and the recovery groups in the Continentalclusters configuration ASCII file.
10. Validate and deploy the Continentalclusters configuration.

---

**NOTE:** This section provides information about configuring a single-instance application in a Continentalclusters environment. Complex workloads are configured in a Continentalclusters environment using Site Aware Disaster Tolerant Architecture (SADTA). Complex workloads are applications configured using multi-node and failover packages with dependencies. SAP and Oracle RAC database are some examples of complex workloads. For configuring a complex workload in a Continentalclusters environment using SADTA, see section “[Configuring complex workloads in a Continentalclusters environment using SADTA](#)” (page 43) .

---

### Creating the Serviceguard clusters at both the sites

The clusters can be created using easy deployment method or the traditional deployment methods.

#### Easy deployment method

A cluster can be created in a single step using `cmdeploycl` command. The command takes in the nodes, the sites, and the lock disk/quorum server information. It produces and applies the produced configuration and then starts up the cluster as well.

The `cmdeploycl` command and options are as follows:

```
# cmdeploycl [-t] [-s site ]... [-n node ]... [-N net_template ] [-c  
clustername] [-q qs_host [qs_ip] | -L locklun] [-cfs]
```

For example,

To create a single site cluster with nodes n1, n2 with a quorum server, run the following command:

```
# cmdeploycl -n n1 -n n2 -q qs.quorum.com
```

#### Traditional deployment method

The traditional approach of cluster deployment is used when there is a need to tune the cluster parameters specifically. First run the `cmquerycl` command to get the cluster configuration template, modify the parameter values as required and then validate the cluster configuration using `cmcheckconf` command.

Once the cluster configuration validation is completed, then apply the cluster configuration using `cmapplyconf` command.

```
# cmquerycl -v -C /etc/cmcluster/cluster.config -n node1 -n node2 -w  
full
```

```
# cmapplyconf -v -C /etc/cmcluster/cluster.config
```

For more information, see *Managing Serviceguard*, latest edition at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> —>HP Serviceguard.

## Setting up security

From Continentalclusters, all the nodes in all the clusters must be able to communicate with one another using SSH.

When Continentalclusters is installed, a special Continentalclusters user group, `conclgrp`, and a special user, `conclusr` are created using `groupadd` and `useradd` commands.

---

**NOTE:** The `conclusr` is used by Continentalclusters software for inter node communication. All Continentalclusters commands and operations must be performed as root user only. When a node is no longer part of Continentalclusters configuration, the user must be deleted from the removed node.

---

To set up the SSH environment for Continentalclusters on all the nodes of all the clusters:

1. Set a password for the Continentalclusters user. By default, the Continentalclusters user is `conclusr`.
  - a. Log in as root user.
  - b. Set the password for `conclusr` on the node.

```
# passwd conclusr
```
2. Set up SSH equivalence between the nodes in the Continentalclusters.
  - a. Log in to any node in the Continentalclusters as `conclusr`.
  - b. Create a text file and add the Fully Qualified Domain Names (FQDN) of all the nodes in all the clusters to be configured in the Continentalclusters.

For example, consider a Continentalclusters with two clusters, Cluster A and Cluster B, each having two nodes, Node 1 and Node 2. Create a text file `<host-list-file>`, with the following entries:

```
Node1.cup.hp.com
Node2.cup.hp.com
Node1.ind.hp.com
Node2.ind.hp.com
```

- c. Run the following Serviceguard command to create and distribute the SSH keys:

```
csshsetup -r -k rsa -f <host-list-file>
```

The SSH keys set up trust among all the Continentalclusters nodes. This command also prompts for the password of the user `conclusr`, for every node specified in the file created in step 2b. Enter the password when prompted.

After the keys are created and distributed, the SSH connection is tested. If errors are detected in the SSH connection, an error message appears. Rectify the error on the node, and run the following command:

```
csshsetup -r -k rsa -f <host-list-file>
```

3. The `conclusr` must have a `USER_ROLE` of `MONITOR`. All users on a node have this role by default. To confirm if `conclusr` has `MONITOR` access, on every node that belongs to Continentalclusters, log in as `conclusr` and run the following command:

```
# cmviewcl
```

In case `conclusr` user does not have `MONITOR` access, the execution of the command fails with the following error:

```
# cmviewcl
```

```
Permission denied to 127.0.0.1
```

```
cmviewcl: Cannot view the cluster configuration:
```

```
Permission denied. This user doesn't have access to view the cluster configuration.
```

To resolve this error, edit the cluster configuration file, by including the following information:

```
USER_NAME conclusr
```

```
USER_HOST ANY_SERVICEGUARD_NODE
```

```
USER_ROLE MONITOR
```

Apply the cluster configuration file. Now, you must be able to view the cluster configuration using the `cmviewcl` command.

## Creating data replication between the clusters

Data replication between the Serviceguard clusters in a Continentalclusters recovery pair extends the scope of high availability to the level of the Continentalclusters. Select a technology for data replication between the two clusters. There are many possible choices, including:

- Logical replication of databases
- Logical replication of file systems
- Physical replication of data volumes via software
- Physical replication of disk units via hardware

For more information on these replication technologies, see *Understanding and Designing Serviceguard Disaster Recovery Architectures* manual available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

The following are different means of creating data replication between the primary and the recovery clusters:

- Array based physical replication supported by Metrocluster products
- Any other array based physical replication technology.
- Logical replication

Continentalclusters offers flexibility in choosing the data replication method to enable recovery.

## Using array based physical replication supported by Metrocluster

The following array based physical replication solutions are supported with Metrocluster.

1. XP P9000 Continuous Access
2. EVA P6000 Continuous Access
3. HP 3PAR Remote Copy
4. EMC SRDF

For specific guidelines and steps to configure data replication, see the following manuals:

For XP P9000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP A.11.00* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For EVA P6000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA A.05.01* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For HP 3PAR Remote Copy, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with 3PAR Remote Copy* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For EMC SRDF, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with EMC SRDF* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

After configuring data replication using any one of the above arrays, the applications in the cluster that needs disaster recovery must be packaged with the appropriate Continentalclusters package module. This must be done at both the primary and the recovery clusters.

## Using any other array based physical replication technology

If you select a data replication technology is chosen that is not described in the previous section, and if the integration is performed independently, then note the following:

- Continentalclusters product is only responsible for Continentalclusters configuration and management commands, the monitoring of remote cluster status, and the notification of remote cluster events.
- Continentalclusters product provides a single recovery command to start all recovery packages that are configured in the Continentalclusters configuration file. These recovery packages are typical Serviceguard's packages. Continentalclusters recovery command does not verify on the status of the devices and data that are used by the application before starting the recovery package. The user is responsible for checking the state of the devices and the data before executing Continentalclusters recovery command.

As part of the recovery process, you must follow the guidelines described in section “Preparing the storage manually in the recovery cluster” (page 29).

## Using software based logical replication

If the data replication software is separate from the application itself, a separate Serviceguard package must be created for it.

Logical data replication may require the use of packages to handle software processes that copy data from one cluster to another or that apply transactions from logs that are copied from one cluster to another. Some methods of logical data replication may use a logical replication data sender package, and others may use a logical replication data receiver package while some may use both. Configure and apply the data sender package, or data receiver package, or both as required. Logical replication data sender and receiver packages are configured as part of the Continentalclusters recovery group, as shown in section, “Creating a Continentalclusters configuration” (page 22).

## Creating volume groups or disk groups on the replicated disks if required

The LVM volume groups or VxVM disk groups that use the application device group must be created (or imported) on all Continentalclusters nodes. Create the LVM volume groups or disk groups in one of the primary site nodes and, import all of them for the rest of the Continentalclusters nodes. For more information on creating volume group, see the section *Building Volume Groups and Logical Volumes* in the latest edition of *Managing Serviceguard A.11.20* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>

For more information on configuring LVM volume group using XP P9000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP A.11.00* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For more information on configuring LVM volume group using EVA P6000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA A.05.01* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For more information on configuring LVM volume group using 3PAR Remote Copy, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with 3PAR Remote Copy* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For more information on configuring LVM volume group using EMC SRDF, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with EMC SRDF* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

## Creating and Exporting LVM Volume Groups

Run the following procedure to create and export volume groups:

---

**NOTE:** If you are using the March 2008 version or later of HP-UX 11i v3, skip step 1; `vgcreate` (1m) will create the device file. Define the appropriate Volume Groups on each host system that might run the application package.

```
# mkdir /dev/vgxx
```

```
# mknod /dev/vgxx/group c 64 0xnn0000
```

where the name `/dev/vgxx` and the number `nn` are unique within the entire cluster.

---

1. Define the appropriate Volume Groups on each host system that might run the application package.
2. Create the Volume Group on the source volumes.
3. Create the logical volume(s) for the volume group.
4. Deactivate and export the Volume Groups on the primary system without removing the special device files.

```
# vgchange -a n <vgname>
```

Make sure that you copy the mapfiles to all of the host systems.

```
# vgexport -s -p -m <mapfilename> <vgname>
```

5. On the source disk site import the VGs on all of the other systems that might run the Serviceguard package and backup the LVM configuration.

```
# vgimport -s -m <mapfilename> <vgname>
```

```
# vgchange -a y <vgname>
```

```
# vgcfgbackup <vgname>
```

```
# vgchange -a n <vgname>
```

6. To make the disk read/write, prepare the storage at the target disk site.

For more information using on XP P9000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP A.11.00* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For more information using on EVA P6000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA A.05.01* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For more information on using using 3PAR Remote Copy , see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with 3PAR Remote Copy* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For more information on using EMC SRDF, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with EMC SRDF* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

7. On the target disk site import the VGs on all of the systems that might run the Serviceguard recovery package and backup the LVM configuration.

```
# vgimport -s -m <mapfilename> <vgname>
```

```
# vgchange -a y <vgname>
```

```
# vgcfgbackup <vgname>
```

```
# vgchange -a n <vgname>
```

## Creating VxVM Disk Groups

Run the following procedure to create VxVM Disk Groups

1. Initialize disks to be used with VxVM by running the `vxdisksetup` command only on the primary system.  
`# /etc/vx/bin/vxdisksetup -i c5t0d0`
2. Create the disk group to be used with the `vxdbg` command only on the primary system.  
`# vxdbg init logdata c5t0d0`
3. Verify the configuration.  
`# vxdbg list`
4. Use the `vxassist` command to create the volume.  
`# vxassist -g logdata make logfile 2048m`
5. Verify the configuration.  
`# vxprint -g logdata`
6. Make the filesystem.  
`# newfs -F vxfs /dev/vx/rdisk/logdata/logfile`
7. Create a directory to mount the volume group.  
`# mkdir /logs`
8. Mount the disk group.  
`# mount /dev/vx/dsk/logdata/logfile /logs`
9. Check if file system exists, then unmount the file system.  
`# umount /logs`

## Installing and Configuring an application in the primary site

Install the application at the primary site in a non replicated disk and configure it to run such that the data is stored in the replicated disks. The installed application and its resources such as volume groups , file system mount points must be configured as a Serviceguard package as explained in the section “[Configuring the Continentalclusters primary and recovery packages](#)” (page 15).

## Installing and configuring a redundant copy of the application in the recovery site

Install the application at the secondary site and configure it to use the same replicated disks as in the previous step. Then configure the application and its resources as a Serviceguard package.

## Configuring the Continentalclusters primary and recovery packages

The packages can be created using any modules supported by HP Serviceguard.

For example, for Oracle application, the Serviceguard Oracle toolkit can be used to create the primary and recovery packages in Continentalclusters.

Continentalclusters supports the following pre-integrated physical replication solutions:

- Continuous Access P9000 and XP
- Continuous Access EVA
- EMC Symmetrix Remote Data Facility
- 3PAR Remote Copy

When any of these pre-integrated solutions are used, the corresponding Continentalclusters specific module must be included in the primary and recovery packages.

For example, while using Continuous Access P9000 or XP replication, the `dtS/ccxpca` module must be used to create the primary and recovery packages.

---

**NOTE:** If none of the above pre-integrated physical replications are used, then it is not required to include any Continentalclusters specific module.

---

## Configuring primary and recovery packages as modular packages when using Continuous Access P9000 or XP

When using Continuous Access P9000 or XP replication in Continentalclusters, the primary and recovery packages must be created using the `dtS/ccxpca` module. To use this module, Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP must be installed on all the nodes in the Continentalclusters. If Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP is not installed on all the nodes, then the following error message is displayed when `cmmakepkg` command is run.

```
The file /etc/cmcluster/modules/dts/ccxpca does not exist or read/search permission not set for a component of
the path: No such file or directory 1 number of errors found in specified module files!
Please fix the error(s) before re-running the command.
cmmakepkg: Error encountered. Unable to create template file.
```

When the package configuration is applied in the cluster using the `cmapplyconf` command, the Metrocluster environment file is automatically generated in the package directory on all the nodes in the cluster.

---

**CAUTION:** Do not delete the Metrocluster environment file that is generated in the package directory. This file is crucial for the startup of the package in Continentalclusters.

---

To configure the primary and recovery packages as modular packages using Continuous Access P9000 and XP with Continentalclusters:

1. Run the following command to create package configuration file:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dtS/ccxpca temp.config
```

---

**NOTE:** Continentalclusters is usually used with applications such as Apache. So, the application toolkit module must also be included when Continentalclusters is used in conjunction with an application.

---

For Example, when Continentalclusters is used in conjunction with the Apache toolkit, the Apache toolkit module and other required modules must also be included with the Continentalcluster module. Run the following command:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dtS/ccxpca -m sg/filesystem -m sg/package_ip -m
ecmt/apache/apache temp.config
```

2. Edit the following attributes in the `temp.config` file:
  - `dtS/xpca/dts_pkg_dir`  
This is the package directory for this modular package. This value must be unique for all packages.  
For example,  
`dtS/xpca/dts_pkg_dir <pkg_dir_name>`
  - `DEVICE_GROUP`  
Specify the XPCA device group name managed by this package, as defined in the RAID Manager configuration file.
  - `HORCMINST`  
Specify the name of the RAID manager instance that manages the XPCA device group used by this package.



- FENCE  
Specify the fence level configured for the XPCA device group that is managed by this package.
  - AUTO\_RUN  
Set the value of this parameter to **no**.  
There are additional parameters available in the package configuration file. HP recommends that you retain the default values of these variables unless there is a specific business requirement to change them. For more information about the additional parameters, see “[Package Attributes for Continentalcluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP](#)” (page 88).
3. Validate the package configuration file.  
# **cmcheckconf -P temp.config**
  4. Apply the package configuration file.  
# **cmapplyconf -P temp.config**

## Configuring the primary and recovery packages as modular packages when using Continuous Access EVA

When using Continuous Access EVA replication in Continentalclusters, the primary and recovery packages must be created using the `dtscccaeva` module. To use this module, Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA must be installed on all the nodes in the Continentalclusters. If Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA is not installed on all the nodes, then the following error message is displayed when `cmmakepkg` command is run.

```
The file /etc/cmcluster/modules/dts/cccaeva does not exist or read/search permission not set for a component
of the path: No such file or directory
1 number of errors found in specified module files!
Please fix the error(s) before re-running the command.
cmmakepkg: Error encountered. Unable to create template file.
```

When configuring the modular packages using Continuous Access EVA, only the package configuration file must be edited. The Metrocluster environment file is automatically generated on all the nodes when the package configuration is applied in the cluster.

---

**⚠ CAUTION:** Do not delete the Metrocluster environment file that is generated in the package directory. This file is crucial for the startup of the package in a Continentalclusters.

---

To configure the primary and recovery packages as modular packages using Continuous Access P6000 EVA with Continentalclusters as follows:

1. Run the following command to create a Continuous Access EVA modular package configuration file:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dtscccaeva temp.config
```

---

**NOTE:** Continentalclusters is usually used with applications such as Apache. So, the application toolkit module must also be included when Continentalclusters is used in conjunction with an application.

---

For Example, when Continentalclusters is used in conjunction with the Apache toolkit, the Apache toolkit module and other required modules must also be included with the Continentalcluster module. Run the following command:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dts/cccaeva -m sg/filesystem -m sg/package_ip -m
tkit/apache/apache temp.config
```

2. Edit the following attributes in the `temp.config` file:

- `dts/caeva/dts_pkg_dir`  
This is the package directory for the modular package. This value must be unique for all the packages.
- `AUTO_RUN`  
Set the value of this parameter to **no**.
- `DT_APPLICATION_STARTUP_POLICY`  
This parameter defines the preferred policy by allowing the application to start with respect to the state of the data in the local volumes. This can be either `Availability_Preferred` or `Data_Currency_Preferred`.
- `DR_GROUP_NAME`  
The name of the DR group used by this package. The DR group name is defined when the DR group is created.
- `DC1_STORAGE_WORLD_WIDE_NAME`  
The world wide name of the EVA storage system that resides in Data Center 1. This storage system name is defined when the storage is initialized.
- `DC1_SMIS_LIST`  
A list of the Windows management servers, which is located in Data Center 1.
- `DC1_HOST_LIST`  
A set of the cluster nodes, which is located in Data Center 1.
- `DC2_STORAGE_WORLD_WIDE_NAME`  
The world wide name of the EVA storage system that is located in Data Center 2. This storage system name is defined when the storage is initialized.
- `DC2_SMIS_LIST`  
A list of the Windows management servers, which is located in Data Center 2.
- `DC2_HOST_LIST`  
A list of the clustered nodes, which is located in Data Center 2.

There are additional parameters available in the package configuration file. HP recommends that you retain the default values of these variables are retained unless there is a specific business requirement to change them.

For more information on the additional parameters, see the section [“Package Attributes for Continentalcluster with Continuous Access EVA”](#) (page 95).

3. Validate the package configuration file.

```
# cmcheckconf -P temp.config
```

4. Apply the package configuration file.

```
# cmapplyconf -P temp.config
```

## Configuring the primary and recovery packages as modular packages when using EMC SRDF

When using EMC SRDF replication in Continentalclusters, the primary and recovery packages must be created using the `dts/ccsrdf` module. To use this module, Metrocluster with EMC SRDF must be installed on all the nodes in Continentalclusters. If Metrocluster with EMC SRDF is not installed on all the nodes, then the following error message is displayed when `cmmakepkg` command is run:

```
The file /etc/cmcluster/modules/dts/ccsrdf does not exist or read/search permission not set for a component of
the path: No such file or directory
1 number of errors found in specified module files!
Please fix the error(s) before re-running the command.
cmmakepkg: Error encountered. Unable to create template file.
```

When configuring modular packages with EMC SRDF, only the package configuration file must be edited. The Metrocluster environment file is automatically generated on all the nodes when the package configuration is applied in the cluster.

---

**△ CAUTION:** Do not delete the Metrocluster environment file that is generated in the package directory. This file is crucial for the startup of the package in Continentalclusters.

---

To configure the primary and recovery packages as modular packages using EMC SRDF with Continentalclusters as follows:

1. Run the following command to create an SRDF modular package configuration file:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dts/ccsrdf temp.config
```

2. Edit the following attributes in the `temp.config` file:

- `dts/dts/dts_pkg_dir`

This is the package directory for the modular package. The Metrocluster environment file is generated for this package in this directory. This value must be unique for all the packages.

For example,

```
dts/dts/dts_pkg_dir /etc/cmcluster/<package_name>
```

- `AUTO_RUN`

Set the value of this parameter to “no”.

- `DEVICE_GROUP`

This variable contains the name of the Symmetrix device group for the package.

- `RDF_MODE`

This parameter defines the data replication modes for the device group. There are additional parameters available in the package configuration file. HP recommends that the default values of these variables are retained unless there is a specific business requirement to change them.

For more information about the additional parameters, see [“Package Attributes for Continentalcluster with EMC SRDF” \(page 97\)](#).

3. Halt the package.

```
# cmhaltpkg <package_name>
```

4. Validate the package configuration file.

```
# cmcheckconf -P temp.config
```

5. Apply the package configuration file.

```
# cmapplyconf -P temp.config
```

6. Run the package on a node in the Serviceguard cluster.  
# `cmrunpkg -n <node_name> <package_name>`
7. Enable global switching for the package.  
# `cmmodpkg -e <package_name>`

## Configuring the primary and recovery packages as modular packages when using 3PAR Remote Copy

When using HP 3PAR Remote Copy in Continentalclusters, the primary and recovery packages must be created using the `dts/cc3parrc` module. To use this module, Metrocluster with 3PAR Remote Copy must be installed on all the nodes in the Continentalclusters.

To configure the primary and recovery packages as modular packages using 3PAR Remote Copy with Continentalclusters:

1. Run the following command to create a modular primary or recovery package configuration file using the Continentalclusters module `dts/cc3parrc`:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dts/cc3parrc pkgName.config
```

---

**NOTE:** Continentalclusters is usually used with applications such as Apache. So, the application toolkit module must also be included when Continentalclusters is used in conjunction with an application.

---

For Example, when Continentalclusters is used in conjunction with the Apache toolkit, the Apache toolkit module and other required modules must also be included with the Continentalcluster module. Run the following command:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dts/cc3parrc -m sg/filesystem -m sg/package_ip -m toolkit/apache/apache temp.config
```

2. Edit the following attributes in the `pkgName.config` file:

- `AUTO_RUN`  
Set the value of this parameter to **no**.
- `DTS_PKG_DIR`  
This is the package directory for the modular package. This value must be unique for all the packages.
- `DC1_NODE_LIST`  
The cluster nodes which resides in Data Center 1.
- `DC2_NODE_LIST`  
The cluster nodes which resides in Data Center 2.
- `DC1_STORAGE_SYSTEM_NAME`  
The DNS resolvable name or IP address of the HP 3PAR storage system, which is located in Data center 1.
- `DC2_STORAGE_SYSTEM_NAME`  
The DNS resolvable name or IP address of the HP 3PAR storage system, which is located in Data center 2.
- `DC1_STORAGE_SYSTEM_USER`  
The user on the HP 3PAR storage system, which is located in Data Center 1.
- `DC2_STORAGE_SYSTEM_USER`  
The user on the HP 3PAR storage system, which is located in Data Center 2.

- `DC1_RC_VOLUME_GROUP`  
The Remote Copy volume group name configured on the HP 3PAR storage system, which is located in Data Center 1, containing the disks used by the application.
  - `DC2_RC_VOLUME_GROUP`  
The Remote Copy volume group name configured on the HP 3PAR storage system, which is located in Data Center 2, containing the disks used by the application.
  - `DC1_RC_TARGET_FOR_DC2`  
The target name associated with the Remote Copy volume group on data center 1 for the HP 3PAR storage system in Data Center 2.
  - `DC2_RC_TARGET_FOR_DC1`  
The target name associated with the Remote Copy volume group on data center 2 for the HP 3PAR storage system in Data Center 1.
  - `RESYNC_WAIT_TIMEOUT`  
The timeout, in minutes, to wait for completion of the Remote Copy volume group resynchronization.
  - `AUTO_NONCURDATA`  
Parameter used to decide whether package can start up with non current data or not.
3. Validate the package configuration file.  
`# cmcheckconf -P pkgName.config`
  4. Apply the package configuration file.  
`# cmapplyconf -P pkgName.config`

## Configuring the monitor package

The template file for creating a monitor package **ccmonpkg** is available in the `/opt/cmconcl/scripts` directory. This package configuration file includes the Continentalclusters monitoring daemon `/usr/sbin/cmclsenryd` as a pre-configured service.

To configure the monitoring daemon as a modular package:

1. On any node in the monitoring cluster, create a directory to store the configuration file of the monitor package. For example, `/etc/cmcluster/ccmonpkg/`
2. Copy the modular package template file, `/opt/cmconcl/scripts/ccmonpkg_modular.config` to the directory created in step 1.  
`# cp /opt/cmconcl/scripts/ccmonpkg_modular.config /etc/cmcluster/ccmonpkg/ccmonpkg.conf`
3. Skip this step if you are not using the DR Rehearsal feature.

If the rehearsal feature is configured, then provide the following information of the filesystem and volume group used as a state directory:

- Volume group name
- mount point
- logical volume name
- Filesystem type
- mount and unmount options
- fsck options

For Example:

```

vg ccvg
fs_name /dev/ccvg/lv011
fs_directory /opt/cmconcl/statedir
fs_mount_opt "-o rw"
fs_umount_opt ""
fs_fsck_opt ""
fs_type "vxfs"

```

For more information about DR Rehearsal feature, see [“Performing Disaster Recovery rehearsal in Continentalclusters” \(page 39\)](#).

4. Specify a name for the `ccmonpkg` log file using `script_log_file` parameter.  
**`script_log_file /etc/cmcluster/ccmonpkg/ccmonpkg.log`**
5. Validate the package configuration file.  
**`# cmcheckconf -P ccmonpkg.conf`**
6. Apply the package configuration.  
**`# cmapplyconf -P ccmonpkg.conf`**

## Creating a Continentalclusters configuration

Continentalclusters configuration is created using a template configuration file. This template configuration file can be produced using the `cmqueryconcl` command.

First, on one cluster, generate an ASCII configuration template file using the `cmqueryconcl` command. The recommended name and location for this file is `/etc/cmcluster/cmconcl.config`. (If preferred, choose a different name.)

For example,

```

# cd /etc/cmcluster
# cmqueryconcl -C cmconcl.config

```

This file has three editable sections:

- Cluster information
- Recovery groups
- Monitoring definitions

## Cluster information

Configure the following parameters:

Parameter	Value	Mandatory or Optional
<code>CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_NAME</code>	Any valid string.	Mandatory.
For Example <code>CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_NAME ccluster1</code>		
<code>CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_STATE_DIR</code>	Full path to the directory on the shared volume.	Optional: Used only when if the maintenance mode feature is required.
For Example <code>CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_STATE_DIR /opt/cmconcl/statedir</code>		
<code>CLUSTER_NAME</code>	The name of the Serviceguard cluster that is a part of the Continentalclusters.	Mandatory.
<code>NODE_NAME</code>	The name of the node that is a part of the Serviceguard cluster defined in the <code>CLUSTER_NAME</code> parameter.	Mandatory: Multiple nodes must have separate <code>NODE_NAME</code> entries.

Parameter	Value	Mandatory or Optional
<i>CLUSTER_DOMAIN</i>	The DNS domain of the nodes defined above.	Mandatory.
<i>MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME</i>	The name of the monitoring package, usually <i>ccmonpkg</i> .	This parameter is required only when the cluster specified in <i>CLUSTER_NAME</i> acts as a the recovery cluster.
<i>MONITOR_INTERVAL</i>	The amount of time between two consecutive monitoring operations.	This parameter is required only when the cluster specified in <i>CLUSTER_NAME</i> acts as a the recovery cluster.
<p>For Example:</p> <pre> CLUSTER_NAME    recovery_cluster CLUSTER_DOMAIN  myorg1.myorg.com NODE_NAME       recovery_node1 NODE_NAME       recovery_node2 MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME  ccmonpkg MONITOR_INTERVAL 60 SECONDS  CLUSTER_NAME    primary_cluster CLUSTER_DOMAIN  myorg1.myorg.com NODE_NAME       primary_node1 NODE_NAME       primary_node2 </pre>		

## Recovery groups

In the Recovery groups, the following parameters are available:

Parameter	Value	Mandatory or Optional
<i>RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME</i>	Any string.	Mandatory.
<i>PRIMARY_PACKAGE</i>	The name of the package acts as primary along with the name of the primary cluster.	Mandatory.
<i>DATA_SENDER_PACKAGE**</i>	The name of the package is in charge of copying data from primary to recovery along with the name of the primary cluster.	Optional: This is used only when a software based replication is used. This package runs only in the primary cluster.
<i>RECOVERY_PACKAGE</i>	The name of the package acts as recovery along with the name of the recovery cluster.	Mandatory.
<i>DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE**</i>	The name of the package is in charge of pulling data from the primary to recovery along with the name of the recovery cluster.	Optional: This is required only when a software based replication is used. This package runs only in the recovery cluster.
<i>REHEARSAL_PACKAGE</i>	The name of the package acts as the rehearsal package along with the name of the recovery cluster.	Optional: This is required only when the DR Rehearsal feature is used.
<p>For Example:</p> <pre> RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME  rggroup1 PRIMARY_PACKAGE      primary_cluster/primary_pkg RECOVERY_PACKAGE     recovery_cluster/recovery_pkg  RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME  rggroup2 PRIMARY_PACKAGE      primary_cluster/primary_pkg1 DATA_SENDER_PACKAGE  primary_cluster/data_sender1 RECOVERY_PACKAGE     recovery_cluster/recovery_pkg1 DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE  recovery_cluster/data_receiver1 REHEARSAL_PACKAGE    recovery_cluster/rehearsal_pkg1 </pre>		

\*\* Most software based replication will need either a data sender package or data receiver package while some might need both.

Multiple recovery groups in Continentalclusters can be configured by repeating parameters.

## Monitoring definitions

The monitoring definitions has the following parameters:

Parameter	Value	Mandatory or Optional
<i>CLUSTER_EVENT</i>	The name of the primary cluster followed by cluster status. The following cluster status' are supported: 1. UNREACHABLE 2. UP 3. DOWN 4. ERROR	Mandatory.
<i>MONITORING_CLUSTER</i>	The name of the recovery cluster that is monitoring the cluster for which alerts are configured.	Mandatory.
<i>CLUSTER_ALERT</i>	The time to wait before placing the primary cluster into alert state for being in the current status.	Mandatory.
<i>CLUSTER_ALARM</i>	The time to wait before placing the primary cluster into alarm state for being in the current status.	Optional.
<i>NOTIFICATION_EMAIL**</i>	The email address. The notification content is provided in the next line.	Optional.
<i>NOTIFICATION_CONSOLE**</i>	The notification content is provided in the next line.	Optional.
<i>NOTIFICATION_OPC**</i>	The OPC level followed by the notification message. The value of <level> might be 8 (normal), 16 (warning), 32 (minor), 64 (major), 128(critical). The notification message is provided in the next line.	Optional.
<i>NOTIFICATION_SNMP**</i>	The SNMP level followed by the notification message. The value of <level> might be 1 (normal), 2 (warning), 3 (minor), 4 (major), 5 (critical). The message is provided in the next line.	Optional.
<i>NOTIFICATION_SYSLOG**</i>	The notification message is provided in the next line.	Optional.
<i>NOTIFICATION_TCP**</i>	The node name and the port number is provided. The notification message is provided in the next line.	Optional.
<i>NOTIFICATION_TEXTLOG**</i>	The path name to the log file is provided. The log file must be under the /var/opt/resmon/log directory. The notification message is provided in the next line.	Optional.
<i>NOTIFICATION_UDP**</i>	The node name and the port number is provided. The notification message is provided in the next line.	Optional.

For Example



Parameter	Value	Mandatory or Optional
CLUSTER_EVENT	primary_cluster/UNREACHABLE	
MONITORING_CLUSTER	recovery_cluster	
CLUSTER_ALERT	5 MINUTES	
NOTIFICATION EMAIL	admin@primary.site	
	"primary_cluster status unknown for 5 min. Call recovery site."	
NOTIFICATION EMAIL	admin@recovery.site	
	"Call primary admin. (555) 555-6666."	
NOTIFICATION CONSOLE		
	"Cluster ALERT: primary_cluster not responding."	
NOTIFICATION TEXTLOG	/var/opt/resmon/log/logging	
	"primary_cluster UNREACHABLE alert"	
NOTIFICATION SYSLOG		
	"primary_cluster UNREACHABLE alert"	
NOTIFICATION UDP	central_node1:6624	
	"primary_cluster UNREACHABLE alert"	
NOTIFICATION TCP	central_node1:9921	
	"primary_cluster UNREACHABLE alert"	
NOTIFICATION OPC	64	
	"primary_cluster UNREACHABLE alert"	
NOTIFICATION SNMP	4	
	"primary_cluster UNREACHABLE alert"	

\*\* These notifications can be configured for both CLUSTER\_ALERT and CLUSTER\_ALARMS separately.

Multitple cluster events can be defined by repeating parameters.

For more information, see ["Sample Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file"](#) (page 115).

## Checking and applying the Continentalclusters configuration

After editing the configuration file on any of the participating clusters in the Continentalcluster. To apply the configuration on all the nodes in the Continentalclusters:

1. Halt all the monitor packages if running.

```
# cmhaltpkg ccmonpkg
```

2. Verify the Continentalclusters configuration.

```
# cmcheckconcl -v -C cmconcl.config
```

This command will verify if all the parameters are within range, all fields are filled, and the entries (such as NODE\_NAME) are valid.

3. Distribute the Continentalclusters configuration information to all the nodes in the Continentalclusters.

```
# cmapplyconcl -v -C cmconcl.config
```

After apply operation, a package named `ccconfpkg` is automatically created. This package is used to store the Continentalclusters configuration data to all the nodes in the cluster. This package is managed by Continentalclusters internally.

---

**NOTE:** It is not required to run this package in the primary or recovery cluster for proper Continentalclusters operation. This special package will be displayed with Serviceguard status commands, such as `cmviewcl`. Cluster administrators must not attempt to modify, delete, start, or stop this package using Serviceguard commands. This package is automatically deleted from all the clusters when the Continentalclusters configuration is deleted using the `cmdeleteconcl` command.

---

## Starting the Continentalclusters monitor package

Starting the monitoring package enables the recovery clusters to monitor the primary clusters. Before doing this, ensure that the primary packages configured are running normally. If logical data replication is configured, ensure that the data receiver and data sender packages are running properly.

If using physical data replication, ensure that it is operational.

On every monitoring cluster start the monitor package.

```
# cmmodpkg -e ccmnnpkg
```

After the monitor package is started, a log file `/var/adm/cmconcl/logs/cmclsenryd.log` is created on the node where the package is running to record the Continentalclusters monitoring activities. HP recommends that this log file be archived or cleaned up periodically.

## Testing the Continentalclusters

This section presents some test procedures and scenarios. You can run the testing procedures as applicable to your environment. In addition, you must perform the standard Serviceguard testing individually on each cluster.

---

**△ CAUTION:** Testing can result in data corruption. Hence, always backup data before testing.

---

### Testing Individual Packages

Use procedures like the following to test individual packages:

1. Use the `cmhaltpkg` command to shut down the package in the primary cluster that corresponds to the package to be tested on the recovery cluster.
2. Do not switch any users to the recovery cluster. The application must be inaccessible to users during this test.
3. Start up the package to be tested on the recovery cluster using the `cmrunpkg` command.
4. Access the application manually using a mechanism that tests network connectivity.
5. Perform read-only actions to verify that the application is running appropriately.
6. Shut down the application on the recovery cluster using the `cmhaltpkg` command.
7. If using physical data replication, do not resync from the recovery cluster to the primary cluster. Instead, manually issue a command that will overwrite any changes on the recovery disk array that may inadvertently have been made.
8. Start the package up in the primary cluster and allow connection to the application.

### Testing Continentalclusters Operations

1. Halt both clusters in a recovery pair, then restart both clusters. The monitor packages on both clusters must start automatically. The Continentalclusters packages (`primary`, `data sender`, `data receiver`, and `recovery`) must not start automatically. Any other packages might or might not start automatically, depending on the configuration.

---

**NOTE:** If an UP status is configured for a cluster, then an appropriate alert notification (email, SNMP, and so on.) must be received at the configured time interval from the node running the monitor package on the other cluster. Due to delays in email or SNMP, the notifications may arrive later than expected.

---

2. While the monitor package is running on a monitoring cluster, halt the monitored cluster (`cmhaltcl -f`). An appropriate alert notification (email, SNMP, and so on.) must be received at the configured time interval from the node running the monitor package. Run the `cmrecovercl`. The command should fail. Additional notifications must be received at the configured time intervals. After the alarm notification is received, run the `cmrecovercl`

command. Any data receiver packages on the monitoring cluster must halt and the recovery packages must start with package switching enabled. Halt the recovery packages.

3. Test 2 should be rerun under a variety of conditions (and multiple conditions) such as the following:

- Rebooting and powering off systems one at a time.
- Rebooting and powering off all systems at the same time.
  - Running the monitor package on each node in each cluster.
  - Disconnecting the WAN connection between the clusters.

If physical data replication is used, disconnect the physical replication links *between* the disk arrays:

- Powering off the disk array at the primary site.
  - Powering off the disk array at the recovery site.
- Testing the `cmrecovercl -f` as well as the `cmrecovercl` command.

Depending on the condition, the primary packages must be running to test real life failures and recovery procedures.

4. After each scenario in tests 2-3, restore both clusters to their production state, restart the primary package (as well as any data sender and data receiver packages) and note any issues, including time delays, and so on.
5. Halt the monitor package on one cluster. Halt the other cluster. Notifications that the other cluster has failed are not generated. Test the mechanisms available to detect manual shutdown of Continentalclusters monitor daemon.
6. Halt the packages on one cluster, but do not halt the cluster. Notifications that the packages on that cluster have failed are not generated. Test the mechanisms available to detect the manual shutdown or failure of primary packages.
7. After the testing is complete, view the status of Continentalclusters:

```
# cmviewconcl
```

```
WARNING: Primary cluster primary_cluster is in an alarm state (cmrecovercl is enabled on recovery cluster
recovery_cluster)
CONTINENTAL CLUSTER ccluster1

RECOVERY CLUSTER recovery_cluster

PRIMARY CLUSTER STATUS EVENT LEVEL POLLING INTERVAL
primary_cluster down alarm 1 min

PACKAGE RECOVERY GROUP test-group
PACKAGE ROLE STATUS
primary_cluster/primary_package primary down
recovery_cluster/recovery_package recovery down
```

To view detailed information on continentalcluster status, run the following command.

```
# cmviewconcl -v
WARNING: Primary cluster primary_cluster is in an alarm state (cmrecovercl is enabled on recovery cluster
recovery_cluster)

CONTINENTAL CLUSTER ccluster1

RECOVERY CLUSTER recovery_cluster

PRIMARY CLUSTER STATUS EVENT LEVEL POLLING INTERVAL
primary_cluster down alarm 1 min

CONFIGURED EVENT STATUS DURATION LAST NOTIFICATION SENT
alert unreachable 1 min --
alarm unreachable 2 min --
alert down 1 min Tue Jun 05 10:52:32 IST 2012
alarm down 2 min Tue Jun 05 10:53:37 IST 2012
alert up 1 min --

PACKAGE RECOVERY GROUP test-group
```

```
PACKAGE ROLE STATUS
primary_cluster/test-pri primary down
recovery_cluster/test-rec recovery down
```

---

## 3 Performing a recovery operation in Continentalclusters environment

### Performing recovery in case of disaster

You can also initiate recovery forcefully even if the alarm event has not triggered but the alert event has happened. An administrator can initiate the recovery using `cmrecovercl` command. However, an administrator must confirm from the primary cluster administrator for the need of the recovery. After the confirmation is obtained, the administrator can start the recovery process using the `cmrecovercl` command. The administrator can choose to recover all the primary packages, or specific packages by specifying the recovery group names.

The primary steps for failing over a package are:

1. Receiving notification.
2. Verifying that recovery is required.
3. Preparing the storage in the recovery cluster
4. Using the `cmrecovercl` command to failover the recovery groups.

### Receiving notification

After the monitor is started, as described in the section “Starting the Continentalclusters monitor package” (page 26), the monitor sends notifications as configured. The following types of notifications are generated as configured in `cmclconf.ascii`:

- `CLUSTER_ALERT` is a change in the status of a cluster. Recovery via the `cmrecovercl` command is not enabled by default. This must be treated as information that the cluster either might be developing a problem or might be recovering from a problem.
- `CLUSTER_ALARM` is a change in the status of a cluster, and indicates that the cluster has been unavailable for an unacceptable period of time. Recovery via the `cmrecovercl` command is enabled.

---

**NOTE:** The `cmrecovercl` command is fully enabled only after a `CLUSTER_ALARM` is issued; however, the command might be used with the `-f` option when a `CLUSTER_ALERT` has been issued.

---

### Verifying that recovery is required

It is important to follow an established protocol for coordinating with the remote cluster administrators to determine whether it is necessary to move the package. This includes initiating person-to-person communication between cluster sites. For example, it might be possible that the WAN network failed, causing the cluster alarm. Even if the cluster is down, it could be intentional and might not require recovery.

Some network failures, such as those that prevent clients from using the application, might require recovery. Other network failures, such as those that only prevent the two clusters from communicating, might not require recovery. Following an established protocol for communicating with the remote site must verify this. For an example of a recovery checklist, see the section “Recovery Checklist” (page 76).

### Preparing the storage manually in the recovery cluster

If Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP, or Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA, or Metrocluster with EMC SRDF, or Metrocluster with 3PAR Remote Copy is not being used, use the following steps before executing the Continentalclusters recovery command, `cmrecovercl`.

Once the notification is received, and it is determined that recovery is required by using the recovery checklist (For a sample checklist, see the section “[Recovery Checklist](#)” (page 76)) do the following:

- Ensure the data used by the application is in usable state. Usable state means the data is consistent and recoverable, even though it might not be current.
- Ensure the secondary devices are in read-write mode. If you are using database or software data replication ensure the data copy at the recovery site is in read-write mode as well.
- If LVM and physical data replication are used, the ID of the primary cluster is also replicated and written on the secondary devices in the recovery site. The ID of the primary cluster must be cleared and the ID of the recovery cluster must be written on the secondary devices before they can be used.

If LVM exclusive-mode is used, issue the following commands from a node in the recovery cluster on all the volume groups that are used by the recovery packages:

```
# vgchange -c n <volume group name>
# vgchange -c y <volume group name>
```

If LVM shared-mode (SLVM) is used, from a node in the recovery cluster, issue the following commands:

```
# vgchange -c n -S n <volume group name>
# vgchange -c y -S y <volume group name>
```

- If VxVM and physical data replication are used, the host name of a node in the primary cluster is the host name of the last owner of the disk group. It is also replicated and written on the secondary devices in the recovery site. The host name of the last owner of the disk group must be cleared out before the secondary devices can be used.

If VxVM is used, issue the following command from a node in the recovery cluster on all the disk groups that are used by the recovery packages.

```
# vxdg deport <disk group name>
```

## Using `cmrecovercl` to recover the recovery groups

- 
- △ CAUTION:** When the Continentalclusters is in recovery enabled state, do not start up the recovery packages using `cmrunpkg` command. Instead use `cmrecovercl` command to start up the recovery packages.
- 

## Previewing the storage preparation

Before starting up the recovery groups, it is recommended to use the `cmdrprev` command to preview the storage failover process. If the `cmdrprev` command exits with failure, then it implies that the storage cannot be prepared successfully. Examine the output of the `cmdrprev` command to take appropriate action. The `cmdrprev` command is supported only in Continentalclusters configuration that uses Metrocluster supported array based replication.

## Recovering the entire cluster after a cluster alarm

Once the `cmdrprev` command succeeds, use the following commands to start the failover recovery process if the Continentalclusters is in an alarm state:

```
# cmrecovercl
```

---

**NOTE:** The `cmrecovercl` command will skip recovery for recovery groups in maintenance mode.

---

## Recovering the entire cluster after a cluster alert

If a notification defined in a `CLUSTER_ALARM` statement in the configuration file is not received, but a `CLUSTER_ALERT` and the remote site has confirmed the must fail over has been received, then override the disabled `cmrecovercl` command by using the `-f` forcing option.

Use this command only after a confirmation from the primary cluster site.

```
# cmrecovercl -f
```

## Recovering a single cluster in an N-1 configuration

In a multiple recovery pair configuration where more than one primary cluster is sharing the same recovery cluster, running `cmrecovercl` without any option will attempt to recover packages for all of the recovery groups of the configured primary clusters. Recovery can also be done in this multiple recovery pair case on a per cluster basis by using option `-c`.

```
# cmrecovercl -c <PrimaryClusterName>
```

## Viewing the Continentalclusters status

The `cmviewconcl` command is used to view the continentalcluster status.

```
# cmviewconcl
```

```
WARNING: Primary cluster primary_cluster is in an alarm state
         (cmrecovercl is enabled on recovery cluster recovery_cluster)
CONTINENTAL CLUSTER  ccluster1
```

```
RECOVERY CLUSTER  recovery_cluster
```

PRIMARY CLUSTER	STATUS	EVENT LEVEL	POLLING INTERVAL
primary_cluster	down	alarm	1 min

```
PACKAGE RECOVERY GROUP  test-group
```

PACKAGE	ROLE	STATUS
primary_cluster/primary_package	primary	down
recovery_cluster/recovery_package	recovery	down

To view detailed information on continentalcluster status, run the following command.

```
# cmviewconcl -v
```

```
WARNING: Primary cluster primary_cluster is in an alarm state
         (cmrecovercl is enabled on recovery cluster recovery_cluster)
```

```
CONTINENTAL CLUSTER  ccluster1
```

```
RECOVERY CLUSTER  recovery_cluster
```

PRIMARY CLUSTER	STATUS	EVENT LEVEL	POLLING INTERVAL
primary_cluster	down	alarm	1 min

CONFIGURED EVENT	STATUS	DURATION	LAST NOTIFICATION SENT
alert	unreachable	1 min	--
alarm	unreachable	2 min	--
alert	down	1 min	Tue Jun 05 10:52:32 IST 2012
alarm	down	2 min	Tue Jun 05 10:53:37 IST 2012
alert	up	1 min	--

```
PACKAGE RECOVERY GROUP  test-group
```

PACKAGE	ROLE	STATUS
primary_cluster/test-pri	primary	down
recovery_cluster/test-rec	recovery	down

---

## 4 Restoring disaster recovery cluster after a disaster

After a failover to a cluster occurs, restoring disaster recovery is a manual process, the most significant of which are:

- Restoring the failed cluster.

Depending on the nature of the disaster it might be necessary to either create a new cluster or to repair the failed cluster.

Before starting up the new or the failed cluster, ensure the `auto_run` flag for all of the Continentalclusters application packages is disabled. This is to prevent starting the packages unexpectedly with the cluster.

- Resynchronizing the data.

To resynchronize the data, you either restore the data to the cluster and continue with the same data replication procedure, or set up data replication to function in the other direction.

The following sections briefly outline some scenarios for restoring disaster tolerance.

### Retaining the original roles for primary and recovery cluster

After disaster recovery, the packages running on the recovery cluster can be moved back to the primary cluster. To do this:

1. Ensure that both clusters are up and running, with the recovery packages continuing to run on the surviving cluster.
2. Compare the clusters to ensure their configurations are consistent. Correct any inconsistencies.
3. For every recovery group where the repaired cluster will run the primary package.
  - a. Synchronize the data from the disks on the surviving cluster to the disks on the repaired cluster. This might be time-consuming.
  - b. Halt the recovered application on the surviving cluster if necessary, and start it on the repaired cluster.
  - c. To keep application down time to a minimum, start the primary package on the cluster before resynchronizing the data of the next recovery group.
4. View the status of the Continentalclusters.

```
# cmviewconcl
```

### Switching the Primary and Recovery Cluster Roles

Configure the failed cluster in a recovery pair as a recovery-only cluster and the recovery cluster as a primary-only cluster. This minimizes the downtime involved with moving the applications back to the restored cluster. It is also assumed that the original recovery cluster has sufficient resources to run all critical applications indefinitely.

---

**NOTE:** In a multiple recovery pairs scenario, where more than one primary cluster are configured to share the same recovery cluster, the following procedure to switch the role of the failed cluster and the surviving cluster must *not* be used.

---

Do the following:

1. Halt the monitor packages. Run the following command on every cluster.

```
# cmhaltpkg ccmnpkg
```
2. Edit the Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file. It is necessary to change the definitions of monitoring clusters, and switch the names of primary and recovery packages in the definitions of recovery groups. It might also be necessary to re-create data sender and data receiver packages.



3. Check and apply the Continentalclusters configuration.

```
# cmcheckconcl -v -C cmconcl.config
# cmapplyconcl -v -C cmconcl.config
```

4. Restart the monitor packages on every cluster.

```
# cmmodpkg -e ccmopkg
```

5. View the status of the Continentalclusters.

```
# cmviewconcl
```

Before applying the edited configuration, the data storage associated with every cluster needs to be prepared to match the new role. In addition, the data replication direction needs to be changed to mirror data from the new primary cluster to the new recovery cluster.

## Switching the Primary and Recovery Cluster Roles using `cmswitchconcl`

Continentalclusters provides the command `cmswitchconcl` to facilitate steps two and three described in the section “Switching the Primary and Recovery Cluster Roles” (page 32). The command `cmswitchconcl` is used to switch the roles of primary and recovery packages of the Continentalclusters recovery groups for which the specified cluster is defined as the primary cluster. Do not use the `cmswitchconcl` command in a multiple recovery pair configuration where more than one primary cluster is sharing the same recovery cluster. Otherwise, the command will fail.

When switching roles for a recovery group configured with a rehearsal package, the rehearsal package in the old recovery cluster must be removed before the configuration is applied. The newly generated recovery group configuration will not have any rehearsal package configured.



**WARNING!** When you configure the maintenance mode for a recovery group, you must move all recovery groups, whose roles have been switched out of the maintenance mode before applying the new configuration.

**NOTE:** Before running the `cmswitchconcl` command, the data storage associated with every cluster needs to be prepared properly to match the new role. In addition, the data replication direction needs to be changed to mirror data from the new primary cluster to the new recovery cluster.

The `cmswitchconcl` command cannot be used for the recovery groups that have both data sender and data receiver packages specified.

To restore disaster tolerance with `cmswitchconcl` while continuing to run the packages on the surviving cluster, use the following procedures:

1. Halt the monitor package on every cluster.

```
# cmhaltpkg ccmopkg
```

2. Run this command.

```
# cmswitchconcl -C currentContinentalclustersConfigFileName -c
oldPrimaryClusterName [-a] [-F NewContinentalclustersConfigFileName]
```

The above command switches the roles of the primary and recovery packages of the Continentalclusters recovery groups for which “OldPrimaryClusterName” is defined as the primary cluster.

The default values of monitoring package name (`ccmopkg`) and interval (60 seconds), and notification scheme (SYSLOG) with notification delay (0 seconds) added for cluster “OldPrimaryClusterName”, which will serve as the recover-only cluster.

If editing of the default values are desired, do it with file

“NewContinentalclusterConfigFileName” if `-F` is specified, or with file,

“CurrentContinentalclustersConfigFileName” if `-F` is not specified. If editing of

the new configuration file is required, do not use the `-a` option. If option `-a` is specified the new configuration applied automatically.

3. If option `-a` is specified with `cmswitchconcl` in step 2, skip this step. Otherwise manually apply the new `Continentalclusters` configuration.

```
# cmapplyconcl -v -c newContinentalclustersConfigFileName (if -F is
specified in step 2)
```

```
# cmapplyconcl -v -c CurrentContinentalclusterConfigFileName (if -F is
not specified in step 2)
```

4. Restart the monitor packages on every cluster.

```
# cmmodpkg -e ccmnpkg
```

5. View the status of the `Continentalclusters`.

```
# cmviewconcl
```

---

**NOTE:** The cluster shared storage configuration file `/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config` is not updated by `cmswitchconcl`. The `CCRAC_CLUSTER` and `CCRAC_INSTANCE_PKGS` variables in the cluster shared storage configuration file must be manually updated on all the nodes in the clusters to reflect the new primary cluster and package names.

---

The `cmswitchconcl` command is also used to switch the package role of a recovery group. If only a subset of the primary packages will remain running on the surviving (recovery) cluster, a new option `-g` is provided with the `cmswitchconcl` command. This option reconfigures the roles of the packages of a recovery group and helps retain recovery protection after a failover.

Usage of option `-g` (recovery group based role switch reconfiguration) is the same as the one for `-c` (cluster based role switch reconfiguration). Note, option `-c` and `-g` of the `cmswitchconcl` command are mutually exclusive.

```
# cmswitchconcl \  
-C currentContinentalclustersConfigFileName \  
-g RecoverGroupName \  
[-a] [-F NewContinentalclustersConfigFileName]
```

## Creating a new Primary Cluster

After creating a new cluster, restore the critical applications to the new cluster and restore the original recovery cluster to act as the recovery cluster for the newly created primary cluster. To do this:

1. Configure the new cluster as a Serviceguard cluster. Use the `cmviewc1` command on the surviving cluster and compare the results to the new cluster configuration. Correct any inconsistencies on the new cluster.

2. Halt the monitor package on the original recovery cluster.

```
# cmhaltpkg ccmnpkg
```

3. Edit the `Continentalclusters` configuration file to replace the data from the old failed cluster with data from the new cluster. Check and apply the `Continentalclusters` configuration.

```
# cmcheckconcl -v -C cmconcl.config
```

```
# cmapplyconcl -v -C cmconcl.config
```

4. Do the following for every recovery group where the new cluster will run the primary package.
  - a. Synchronize the data from the disks on the surviving recovery cluster to the disks on the new cluster.
  - b. To keep application down time to a minimum, start the primary package on the newly created cluster before resynchronizing the data of the next recovery group.

5. If the new cluster acts as a recovery cluster for any recovery group, create a monitor package for the new cluster.

Apply the configuration of the new monitor package.

```
# cmapplyconf -p ccmonpkg.config
```

6. Restart the monitor package on the recovery cluster.

```
# cmrunpkg ccmonpkg
```

7. View the status of the Continentalclusters.

```
# cmviewconcl
```

## Creating a new Recovery Cluster

After creating a new cluster to replace the *failed* primary cluster, if the downtime involved in moving the applications back is a concern, then make the newly created cluster as the recovery cluster. It is also assumed that the original recovery cluster has sufficient resources to run all critical applications indefinitely. Do the following to set up the recovery cluster.

- Change the original recovery cluster to the role of primary cluster for all recovery groups.
- Configure the new cluster as a recovery cluster for all those groups.

Configure the new cluster as a standard Serviceguard cluster, and follow the usual procedure to configure the Continentalclusters with the new cluster used as a recovery cluster for all recovery groups.

---

**NOTE:** In a multiple recovery pairs scenario, (where more than one primary cluster is configured to share the same recovery cluster), reconfiguration of the recovery cluster must *not* be done due to the failure of one of the primary clusters.

---

---

# 5 Disaster recovery rehearsal in Continentalclusters

## Overview of Disaster Recovery rehearsal

The disaster recovery setup must be validated to ensure that a recovery can be performed smoothly when disaster strikes. Since disasters are once in a lifetime events, it is likely that a disaster recovery is never performed for long time. In this time, a lot of configuration drift and other changes will appear in either at the production data center or at the recovery data center.

Disaster Recovery Rehearsal is a mechanism that allows administrators to test and validate the disaster recovery processes without actually performing a recovery.

## Configuring Continentalclusters Disaster Recovery rehearsal

A BC is required for every secondary mirror copy in the device group, on the recovery cluster. In XP terminology, one dedicated BC is required for every SVOL device in a P9000 and XP device group on the recovery cluster. Before the start of rehearsal, this BC is split from the secondary mirror copy so that it retains a copy of the production data while rehearsal is in progress.

To configure DR Rehearsal:

1. Configure Maintenance Mode Feature in Continentalclusters
  - a. Set up the file system for Continentalclusters state directory.
  - b. Configure the monitor package to mount the file system from the shared disk.
2. Configure the rehearsal package.
3. Modify the Continentalclusters configuration.

## Configuring maintenance mode in Continentalclusters

### Overview of maintenance mode feature

Continentalclusters allows any recovery group to be in maintenance mode. When a recovery group is in maintenance mode, the Continentalclusters `cmrecoverc1` command does not start up the recovery package even if the primary cluster is in an ALARM state.

The maintenance mode feature requires a shared disk to be presented to all the nodes in the recovery cluster. A filesystem is created over the shared disk, and is mounted on the node where the monitor package is running. This filesystem directory is used to store information about the maintenance mode of the recovery groups. Having the maintenance mode information on a shared disk, prevents the loss of maintenance mode information due to monitor package failover.

The following sections describe the procedure to configure the filesystem over the shared disk and enable automatic mounting of the filesystem via monitor package.

### Setting up the file system for Continentalclusters state directory

Setting up the Continentalclusters state directory on those clusters that are set up with Continentalclusters monitor package using a non-replicated shared disk.

To create the filesystem, on any node in the recovery cluster:

1. Create the volume group with the disk that is presented to all the nodes in the recovery cluster.

```
# pvcreate -f <device>
# vgcreate /dev/<vgname> <device>
```

For Example:

```
# pvcreate -f /dev/sda1
```

- ```
# vgcreate /dev/vgcc -f /dev/sda1
```
2. Create a logical volume in the volume group and install 'vxfs' file system in the logical volume:

```
# lvcreate -L <size> <vgname>
mke2fs -j <Lvol>
```

 For Example:

```
# lvcreate -L 1000 /dev/vgcc;
mke2fs -j /dev/vgcc/rlvol1
```
  3. On every node of the recovery cluster, create the Continentalclusters shared directory /opt/cmconcl/statedir as follows:

```
# mkdir <directorypath>
```

 For Example:

```
# mkdir /opt/cmconcl/statedir
```
  4. Run vgscan to make the LVM configuration visible on the other nodes in the recovery cluster.

```
vgscan
```

### Configuring the monitor package to mount the file system from the shared disk

On the recovery cluster, re-configure the monitor package to activate the volume group configured with the shared disk in exclusive mode, and mount the Continentalclusters state filesystem directory that was created on the shared disk.

To configure the monitor package with the state directory as follows:

1. Obtain the package configuration for the monitor package.

```
# cmgetconf -p ccmopkg > cc_new.config
```
2. Provide the name of the volume group used for state directory as a value to the parameter "vg".
 For Example:

```
vg vgcc
```
3. Provide the name of the logical volume used for the state directory as a value to the parameter "fs\_name".
 For Example:

```
fs_name /dev/vgcc/lvol1
```
4. Provide the absolute path of the state directory as the value for the parameter "fs\_directory".
 For Example:

```
fs_directory /opt/cmconcl/statedir
```
5. Provide the type of the file system used for the state directory as the value for the parameter "fs\_type".
 For Example:

```
fs_type ext2
```
6. Provide proper values for the parameters *fs\_mount\_opt*, *fs\_umount\_opt* and *fs\_fsck\_opt*.
 For Example:

```
fs_mount_opt -o rw
```

7. Halt the monitor package `ccmonpkg` and apply the edited configuration file.

For Example:

```
# cmhaltpkg ccmonpkg
# cmapplyconf -P cc_new.config
```

8. Start the monitor package `ccmonpkg` after applying the configuration.

For Example:

```
# cmrunpkg ccmonpkg
```

## Configuring Continentalclusters rehearsal packages

The rehearsal packages use all the modules that are used to create the recovery package. However, when using any of the pre-integrated physical replication solutions, the replication technology specific Continentalclusters module must not be included.

If Continentalclusters is used with EMC SRDF, then set the variable `AUTOSPLITR1` to 1 before splitting the replication links. This ensures high availability of primary packages within the primary site in case of failures during the rehearsal process.

For Example:

In a Continentalclusters configuration that uses Continuous Access P9000 and XP, the recovery package must be created with `dts/ccxpca` module. While creating the rehearsal package for this recovery group, the `dts/ccxpca` module must not be included.

To create a rehearsal package:

1. Create a package configuration identical to the recovery package configuration but without any Continentalclusters module.
2. Change the values of the following parameters:

- `package_name`
- `package_ip`
- `service_name`

For all other parameters, provide the same values as specified in the recovery package configuration.

3. Validate the package configuration.

```
# cmcheckconf -P <package_name>
```

4. Apply the package configuration.

```
# cmapplyconf -P <package_name>
```

## Modifying Continentalclusters configuration

The Continentalclusters parameter `CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_STATE_DIR` is the absolute path to the filesystem directory created in section [“Setting up the file system for Continentalclusters state directory”](#) (page 36).

To update the configuration with the rehearsal packages and the Continentalclusters shared directory name:

1. In the Cluster section of the Continentalclusters configuration ASCII file, uncomment the `CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_STATE_DIR` field, and against it enter the value for filesystem directory that was added in the `fs_name` of `ccmonpkg` configuration.

For Example:

```
CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_STATE_DIR /opt/cmconcl/statedir
```

2. Under the recovery group section for which the rehearsal package was configured, enter the rehearsal package name against REHEARSAL\_PACKAGE field.

For Example:

```
Recovery group   inv_rac10g_recgp
Primary package   Atlanta/inv_rac10g_primpkg
Recovery package  Houston/inv_rac10g_recpkg
Rehearsal package Houston/inv_rac10g_rhpkg
```

3. Halt the monitor package.  
**# cmhaltpkg ccmompkg**
4. Verify the Continentalclusters configuration ASCII file.  
**# cmcheckconcl -v -C cmconcl.config**
5. Apply the Continentalclusters configuration file.  
**# cmapplyconcl -v -C cmconcl.config**
6. Start the monitor package.  
**# cmrunpkg ccmompkg**

## Precautions to be taken while performing DR Rehearsal

This section describes the precautions that the operator must follow while performing DR rehearsals.

### Client access IP address at recovery cluster

During a DR rehearsal, Continentalclusters will start the rehearsal package that is configured to bring up the application instance at the recovery cluster. After the application instance starts at the recovery cluster, clients must presume that a recovery has occurred, and must attempt to connect to it to perform production transactions. This can lead to split brain situation, where one set of clients are connected to the application instance at the primary cluster while the second set of clients are connected to the application instance at the recovery cluster (which was started for rehearsal). Hence, during rehearsal, it is the operator's responsibility to ensure that production clients do not access the application instance at the recovery cluster and attempt production transactions.

One way to prevent split brain is to prevent application access to clients, which can be done by modifying the client access IP address at the recovery cluster during rehearsal. For example, when rehearsal package is configured for Oracle Single Instance, ensure that the rehearsal package IP address is different from that of the recovery package.

### Cluster role switch during rehearsal

Using the Continentalclusters commands `cmswitchconcl` and `cmapplyconcl`, the recovery cluster role can be changed to be the new primary cluster. Operators are responsible for ensuring that the recovery groups are not in maintenance mode before attempting to switch cluster roles. This can potentially allow primary packages to start on disks invalidated by the rehearsal at the new primary cluster.

## Performing Disaster Recovery rehearsal in Continentalclusters

To start and stop rehearsal for a recovery group:

1. Verify the data replication environment.
2. Move the recovery group into maintenance mode.
3. Prepare the replication environment for DR rehearsal.
4. Start the rehearsal for the recovery group.
5. Stop the rehearsal package.

6. Restore the replication environment for recovery.
7. Move the recovery group out of maintenance mode.
8. Clean up the mirror copy.

## Verify data replication environment

You can use the `cmdrprev` command to preview the preparation of data replication environment for an actual recovery can be previewed. The command identifies errors in data replication environment which will potentially fail an actual recovery.

Run the following command on every node of the recovery cluster and verify that the command returns a value 0.

```
# cmdrprev -p <recovery_package>
```

## Move the recovery group into maintenance mode

Before starting the disaster recovery rehearsal operation, the recovery packages must be moved into maintenance mode. This prevents startup of the recovery packages even if disaster recovery is triggered during rehearsal operation.

```
# cmrecovercl -d -g <recovery_group_name>
```

Run the `cmviewconcl` command to verify that the recovery group is in maintenance mode.

```
# cmviewconcl -v
```

## Prepare the replication environment for DR rehearsal

Manually suspend the replication and enable write access to secondary mirror copy configured for the package.

```
# pairsplit -g <device_group> -rw (in case of XP)
```

```
# symrdf -g <device_group> split (in case of EMC SRDF)
```

For every volume group that is configured for the package, delete the host id tag by running the following command from any of the recovery cluster nodes.

Split the BC pair at recovery cluster.

```
# export HORCC_MRCF=1
```

```
# pairsplit -g <device_group> (in case of XP)
```

```
# symrdf -g <device_group> split (in case of EMC SRDF)
```

```
# unset HORCC_MRCF
```

## Start rehearsal

To perform rehearsal operation on a recovery group, run the `cmrecovercl` command.

```
# cmrecovercl -r -g <recovery_group>
```

The `cmrecovercl` command runs the rehearsal package that is configured in the recovery group.

---

**NOTE:** Before starting the rehearsal, make any application configuration changes that might be required due to the change in the client access IP address, which is now the rehearsal package IP address. For example, in case of Oracle Single Instance application, reconfigure the listener to listen on the rehearsal package IP address. See “[Precautions to be taken while performing DR Rehearsal](#)” (page 39) for the list of precautionary steps.

---

After the `cmrecovercl` command completes, run the `cmviewcl` command to verify that the rehearsal packages are up.



## Stop rehearsal package

After performing the rehearsal operations, the rehearsal package must be halted using the `cmhaltpkg` command.

```
# cmhaltpkg <rehearsal_pkg>
```

## Restore replication environment for recovery

First, synchronize the secondary mirror copy with the primary mirror copy and then synchronize the BC with the secondary mirror copy.

```
# pairresync -g <device_group> (In case of XP)
# symrdf -g <device_group> establish (In case of EMC SRDF)
# export HORCC_MRCF=1
# pairresync -g <device_group> (In case of XP)
# symrdf -g <device_group> establish (In case of EMC SRDF)
# unset HORCC_MRCF
```

## Move the recovery group out of maintenance mode

After the rehearsal operations are completed, the recovery groups must be taken out of maintenance mode. If not, an actual recovery using the `cmrecovercl` command might fail to start up the recovery packages in the recovery groups.

```
# cmrecovercl -e -g <recovery_group_name>
```

Run the `cmviewconcl` command to verify that the recovery group is not in maintenance mode.

```
# cmviewconcl -v
```

## Cleanup of secondary mirror copy

After the rehearsal is completed and before the recovery groups are moved out of maintenance mode, the operator must ensure that the rehearsal changes on the secondary mirror copy are cleaned up.

During rehearsal, the rehearsal application will have invalidated the secondary mirror copy with non-production I/O. Hence, before moving the recovery group out of maintenance, the operator must clean up the secondary mirror copy by synchronizing it with the primary mirror copy or restoring from the BC (in case the primary cluster fails during rehearsal). If not, recovery (via `cmrecovercl`) or recovery package startup via the `cmrunpkg` and `cmmodpkg` commands must potentially start up the recovery package on data invalidated by rehearsal.

## Recovering the primary cluster disaster during DR Rehearsal

In case of a disaster at the primary cluster while performing DR Rehearsal, follow the below steps to recover the application at the recovery cluster:

- Halt the rehearsal package.  

```
# cmhaltpkg <rehearsal_package_name>
```
- Restore the recovery cluster data using the BC.  

```
# export HORCC_MRCF=1
# pairresync -restore -g <device_group> -I <instance_no>
# unset HORCC_MRCF
```

- Move the recovery group out of maintenance mode  
# `cmrecovercl -e -g <recovery_group_name>`
- Run `cmrrcovercl` command.  
# `cmrecovercl`

## Limitations of DR rehearsal feature

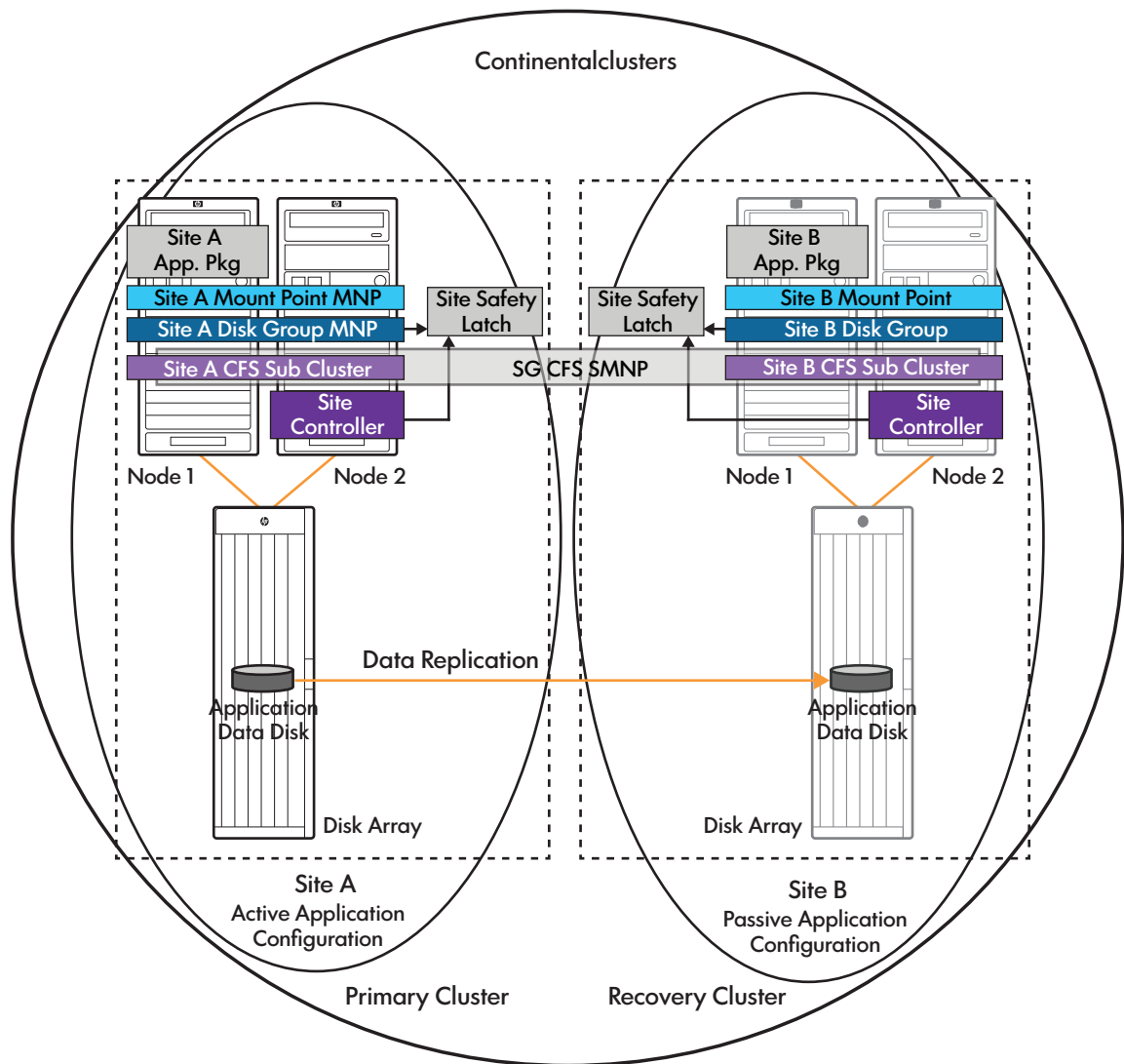
Following are the limitations of the DR rehearsal feature:

1. The replication, preparation, and restoration for rehearsal and restoration for recovery is manual. The operator must prepare and restore the replication environment for every recovery group.
2. The `cmdrprev` preview command currently supports only verbose output.
3. Since the replication between the primary and recovery cluster is suspended during rehearsal, the production changes to the primary mirror copy must not be replicated to the recovery cluster. Hence, in the case of a disaster and subsequent recovery of primary cluster during rehearsal, the production changes since the start of rehearsal is lost. Therefore, to minimize the “potential” data loss, HP recommends that you adjust the DR rehearsal time window to be less than the recovery point object.

## 6 Configuring complex workloads in a Continentalclusters environment using SADTA

Site Aware Disaster Tolerant Architecture (SADTA) enables automatic recovery of an entire application stack that is protected using physical data replication. The application stack can be packaged using multi-node packages and failover packages with dependencies among them. SADTA also provides a single interface for manual failover of all the packages configured for an application stack.

**Figure 2 SADTA Configuration in Continentalclusters**



This section lists and describes the procedures for configuring a complex workload in Continentalclusters using SADTA.

To configure a complex workload in Continentalclusters:

1. Set up the replication between the arrays in the primary cluster and the recovery cluster.
2. Configure a primary cluster with a single site defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration file.
3. Configure a recovery cluster with a single site defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration file.
4. Set up the complex workload in the primary cluster.

5. Configure the Site Controller Package in the primary cluster.
6. Configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the primary cluster.
7. Suspend the replication to the recovery cluster.
8. Set up the redundant complex workload in the recovery cluster.
9. Configure the Site Controller Package in the recovery cluster.
10. Configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the recovery cluster.
11. Resume the replication to the recovery cluster.
12. Configure Continentalclusters.
13. Configure Continentalclusters recovery group with the Site Controller Package in the primary cluster as the primary package and, Site Controller package in the recovery cluster as a recovery package.

## Setting up replication

When complex workloads are configured using SADTA, the data of the complex workload must be replicated in all the disk arrays in every cluster. The replication mechanism differs depending on the type of array in your environment.

SADTA supports the following replication types:

- Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP
- Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA
- Metrocluster with EMC SRDF
- Metrocluster with 3PAR Remote Copy

For more information about configuring replication for the arrays in your environment, see the following manuals.

For XP P9000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP A.11.00* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For EVA P6000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA A.05.01* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For HP 3PAR Remote Copy, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with 3PAR Remote Copy* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For EMC SRDF, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with EMC SRDF* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

## Configuring the primary cluster with a single site

To configure complex workloads using SADTA in Continentalclusters, the primary cluster must be created with a single site configured in the Serviceguard cluster configuration file.

---

**NOTE:** The primary cluster can be a Metrocluster with two sites in case of a Three Data Center configuration.

---

To configure the primary cluster with a single site defined in the Serviceguard configuration file:

1. Run the `cmquerycl` command to create a cluster configuration file.
2. Specify a site configuration in the cluster configuration file you just created.

Following is a sample of the site configuration:

```
SITE_NAME <site name>
NODE_NAME <node1>
SITE <site name>
... ..
NODE_NAME <node2>
```

```
SITE site name>
...
```

---

**NOTE:** Only one site must be specified in the cluster configuration file, and all the nodes in the cluster must belong to this site.

---

3. Run the `cmapplyconf` command to apply the configuration file.
4. Run the `cmruncl` command to start the cluster.

After the cluster is started, you can run the `cmviewcl` command to view the single site configuration.

## Configuring the recovery cluster with a single site

The recovery cluster must be created with a single site configured in the Serviceguard cluster configuration file. The procedure to create a recover cluster with single site is identical to the procedure for creating a primary cluster with a single site. To configure a recovery cluster with a single site, complete the procedure described in section “[Configuring the primary cluster with a single site](#)” (page 44), for the recovery cluster.

## Setting up the complex workload in the primary cluster

To create a complex workload, configure the required storage device (volume groups or disk groups) on the disks that are part of the replication pair at the primary cluster. Then, configure a complex workload package stack in this cluster.

Setting up the complex workload in the primary cluster involves the following steps:

1. Configuring the storage device for the complex workload in the primary cluster.
2. Configuring the complex workload stack in the primary cluster.
3. Halting the complex workload in the primary cluster.

## Configuring the storage device for the complex workload at the primary cluster

The shared storage device for storing data of a complex workload can be configured using CFS, CVM, or SLVM. When using CFS, appropriate Cluster File Systems must be created on the replicated disks. When using SLVM or CVM, appropriate SLVM volume groups or CVM disk groups must be created with the required raw volumes over the replicated disks.

### Configuring the storage device using CFS or SG SMS CVM

Serviceguard enables you to manage all the CVM diskgroups and the CFS mountpoints required by an application within a single package. This helps in significantly reducing the number of packages a cluster administrator must manage.

To set up the CVM disk group volumes on the CVM cluster master node in the primary cluster:

1. Initialize the source disks of the replication pair:

```
# /etc/vx/bin/vxdisksetup -i <replicated_disk_1>
# /etc/vx/bin/vxdisksetup -i <replicated_disk_2>
```
2. Create a disk group for the complex workload data.

```
# vxdg -s init <cvm_dg_name> <replicated_disk_1> <replicated_disk_2>
```
3. Activate the CVM disk group in the primary cluster.

```
# vxdg -g <cvm_dg_name> set activation=sw
```
4. Create a volume from the disk group.

```
# vxassist -g <cvm_dg_name> make <cvm_dg_vol_name> 4500m
```

---

**NOTE:** Skip this step if CVM raw volumes are used for storing the data.

---

5. Create a filesystem.
 

```
# newfs -F vxfs /dev/vx/rdisk/<cvm_dg_name>/<cvm_dg_vol_name>
```
6. Create a package configuration file.
 

```
# cmmakepkg -m sg/cfs_all /etc/cmcluster/cfspkg1.ascii
```
7. Edit the following package parameters in the `cfspkg1.ascii` package configuration file.
  - `node_name <node1>`
  - `node_name <node2>`
  - `package_name <siteA_cfs_pkg_name>`
  - `cvm_disk_group <cvm_dg_name>`
  - `cvm_activation_mode "node1=sw node2=sw"`
  - `cfs_mount_point <cvm_mount_point>`
  - `cfs_volume <cvm_dg_name>/<cvm_dg_vol_name>`
  - `cfs_mount_options "node1=cluster node2=cluster"`
  - `cfs_primary_policy ""`

where, `node1` and `node2` are the nodes at the primary cluster. Do not configure any mount specific attributes such as `cfs_mount_point`, `cfs_mount_options` if SG SMS CVM is configured as raw volumes.
8. Verify the package configuration file.
 

```
# cmcheckconf -P cfspkg1.ascii
```
9. Apply the package configuration file.
 

```
# cmapplyconf -P cfspkg1.ascii
```
10. Run the package.
 

```
# cmrunpkg <siteA_cfs_pkg_name>
```

## Configuring the storage device using Veritas CVM

To set up the CVM disk group volumes on the CVM cluster master node in the primary cluster:

1. Initialize the source disks of the replication pair:
 

```
# /etc/vx/bin/vxdisksetup -i <replicated_disk_1>
# /etc/vx/bin/vxdisksetup -i <replicated_disk_2>
```
2. Create a disk group for the complex workload data.
 

```
# vxdg -s init <cvm_dg_name> <replicated_disk_1> <replicated_disk_2>
```
3. Activate the CVM disk group on all the nodes in the primary cluster CVM sub-cluster.
 

```
# vxdg -g <cvm_dg_name> set activation=sw
```
4. Create a volume from the disk group.
 

```
# vxassist -g <cvm_dg_name> make <cvm_dg_vol_name> 4500m
```
5. Create Serviceguard Disk Group MNP packages for the disk group.

---

ⓘ **IMPORTANT:** Veritas CVM disk groups must be configured as a dedicated modular MNP package using the `cvm_dg` attribute. This modular MNP package must be configured to have a package dependency on the `SG-CFS-pkg` SMNP package.

---

To create a Modular package for a CVM disk group as follows:

1. Create a package configuration file using the following modules:  

```
# cmmakepkg -m sg/multi_node -m sg/dependency -m\
sg/resource -m sg/volume_group <cvm_dg_pkg_name>.conf
```
2. Edit the configuration file and specify values for the following attributes:  

```
package_name <cvm_dg_pkg_name>
package_type multi_node
cvm_dg <cvm_dg_name>
cvm_activation_cmd "vxdg -g \${DiskGroup}set activation=sharedwrite"
```
3. Specify the nodes in the primary cluster using the `node_name` attribute.  

```
node_name <node1>
node_name <node2>
```

In this command, `<node1>` and `<node2>` are nodes in the primary cluster.
4. Specify the Serviceguard dependency.  

```
dependency_name SG-CFS-pkg_dep
dependency_condition SG-CFS-pkg=up
dependency_location same_node
```
5. Apply the newly created package configuration.  

```
# cmapplyconf -v -P <cvm_dg_pkg_name>.conf
```

## Configuring the storage device using SLVM

To create volume groups on the primary cluster:

1. Define the appropriate volume groups on every host system in the primary cluster.  

```
# mkdir /dev/<vg_name>
# mknod /dev/<vg_name>/group c 64 0xnn0000
```

where the name `/dev/<vg_name>` and the number `nn` are unique within the entire cluster.
2. Create the volume group on the source volumes.  

```
# pvcreate -f /dev/rdisk/cxydz
# vgcreate /dev/<vg_name> /dev/dsk/cxydz
```
3. Create the logical volume for the volume group.  

```
# lvcreate -L XXXX /dev/<vg_name>
```

In this command, `XXXX` indicates the size in MB.
4. Export the volume groups on the primary system without removing the special device files.  

```
# vgchange -a n <vg_name>
# vgexport -s -p -m <map_file_name> <vg_name>
```

Ensure that you copy the mapfiles to all host systems.
5. On the nodes in the primary cluster, import the volume group.  

```
# vgimport -s -m <map_file_name> <vg_name>
```
6. On every node, ensure that the volume group to be shared is currently inactive on all the nodes.  

```
# vgchange -a n /dev/<vg_name>
```
7. On the configuration node, make the volume group shareable by members of the primary cluster in the cluster.  

```
# vgchange -S y -c y /dev/<vg_name>
```

Run this command on the configuration node only. The cluster must be running on all the nodes for the command to succeed.

---

**NOTE:** Both the `-s` and the `-c` options are specified.

---

The `-s y` option makes the volume group shareable, and the `-c y` option causes the cluster ID to be written out to all the disks in the volume group. In effect, this command specifies the cluster to which a node must belong in order to obtain shared access to the volume group.

## Configuring the complex workload at the primary cluster

Install and configure the complex workload on the nodes in the primary cluster. Create Serviceguard packages for the complex workload in the primary cluster. This package must be configured to run on the nodes in the primary cluster. The procedure to configure a complex workload stack in the primary cluster differs depending on CVM, CFS, and SLVM.

### Configuring complex workload packages to use CFS

When the storage for the complex workload is configured on a Cluster File System (CFS), the complex workload package must be configured to depend on the MNP package managing CFS mount point through package dependency. With package dependency, the Serviceguard package that starts the complex workload will not run until its dependent MNP package managing CFS mount point is up, and will halt before the MNP package managing CFS mount point is halted.

Set up the following dependency conditions in the Serviceguard package configuration file:

```
DEPENDENCY_NAME <cfs_mp_pkg_name_dep>
DEPENDENCY_CONDITION <cfs_with_mp_pkg_name>=UP
DEPENDENCY_LOCATION SAME_NODE
```

### Configuring complex workload packages to use CVM

When the storage for the complex workload is configured on a CVM disk groups, the complex workload package must be configured to depend on the MNP package managing CVM disk groups through package dependency. With package dependency, the Serviceguard package that starts the complex workload will not run until its dependent MNP package managing CVM disk group is up, and will halt before the MNP package managing CVM disk group is halted.

Set up the following dependency conditions in the Serviceguard package configuration file:

```
DEPENDENCY_NAME <cvm_mp_pkg_name_dep>
DEPENDENCY_CONDITION <cvm_with_mp_pkg_name>=UP
DEPENDENCY_LOCATION SAME_NODE
```

### Configuring complex workload packages to use SLVM

When the storage for the complex workload is configured on an SLVM volume group, the complex workload package must be configured to activate and deactivate the required storage in the package configuration file.

```
vg <vgname>
vgchange_cmd "vgchange -a s"
```

## Halting the complex workload in the primary cluster

Halt the complex workload stack on the node in the primary cluster using the `cmhaltpkg` command.

For example:

```
# cmhaltpkg complex_workload_pkg1
# cmhaltpkg complex_workload_pkg2
# cmhaltpkg complex_workload_pkg3
```



## Configuring the Site Controller Package in the primary cluster

The procedure on a node in the primary cluster to configure the Site Controller Package as follows:

1. Create a Site Controller Package configuration file using the `dts/sc` and array-specific module.

For example, when using Continuous Access P9000 and XP, the command is:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dts/sc -m dts/ccxpca cw_sc.config
```

When using Continuous Access EVA, the command is:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dts/sc -m dts/cccaeva cw_sc.config
```

When using EMC SRDF, the command is:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dts/sc -m dts/ccsrdf cw_sc.config
```

When using 3PAR Remote Copy, the command is:

```
# cmmakepkg -m dts/sc -m dts/cc3parrc cw_sc.config
```

2. Edit the `cw_sc.config` file by specifying the following:

- Name for the `package_name` attribute.

```
package_name <site_controller_package_name>
```

- Names of the nodes explicitly using the `node_name` attribute.

- The Site Controller Package directory for the `dts/dts/dts_pkg_dir` attribute.

```
dts/dts/dts_pkg_dir /etc/cmcluster/<site_controller_package_name>
```

This is the package directory for this Site Controller Package. The Metrocluster environment file is automatically generated for this package in this directory.

- Specify a name for the log file.

```
script_log_file <log_file_name>
```

- Specify the site without any packages.

Do not specify any packages using the `critical_package` or `managed_package` attributes.

```
site <site name>
```

- Edit the array specific parameters. For configuring these parameters, see the following sections based on the type of the array used in your environment.

3. Apply the Site Controller Package configuration file in the cluster.

```
# cmmapplyconf -P cw_sc.config
```

- 
- ⓘ **IMPORTANT:** Ensure packages are not configured with the `critical_package` or `managed_package` attributes in the Site Controller Package configuration file. These attributes must be configured only after configuring the Site Safety Latch dependencies. For information about configuring these dependencies, see [“Configuring the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the primary cluster”](#) (page 49).
- 

## Configuring the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the primary cluster

After the Site Controller Package configuration is applied, the corresponding Site Safety Latch is automatically configured in the cluster. This section describes the procedure to configure Site Safety Latch dependencies.

The procedure to configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies:

1. If you have SG SMS CVM or CFS configured in your environment, add the EMS resource dependency to all DG MNP packages in the complex workload stack in the primary cluster. If you have SLVM configured in your environment, add the EMS resource details in the packages that are the foremost predecessors in the dependency order among the workload packages in the primary cluster. If you have Veritas CVM configured in your environment, add the EMS resource details in the CVM disk group packages in the primary cluster.

```
resource_name /dts/mcsc/cw_sc
resource_polling_interval 120
resource_up_value != DOWN
resource_start automatic
```

Run the `cmapplyconf` command to apply the modified package configuration.

2. Verify the Site Safety Latch resource configuration in the primary cluster.

Run the following command to view the EMS resource details:

```
# cmviewcl -v -p <pkg_name>
```

3. Configure the Site Controller Package with complex-workload packages in the primary cluster.

```
site <site1>
critical_package <site1>_cw
managed_package <site1>_cw_dg
managed_package <site1>_cw_mp
```

---

**NOTE:**

- There must be no comments in the same line as the critical and managed packages.
- Always set `auto_run` parameter to yes for failover packages configured as critical or managed packages.
- The packages configured with mutual dependency must not be configured as critical or managed packages.

4. Re-apply the Site Controller Package configuration.

```
# cmapplyconf -v -P /etc/cmcluster/cw_sc/cw_sc.config
```

After applying the Site Controller Package configuration, you can run the `cmviewcl` command to view the packages that are configured.

## Suspending the replication to the recovery cluster

In the earlier procedures, the complex workload and Site Controller package were created in the primary cluster. Now, an identical complex workload using the target replicated disk must be configured with the complex workload stack in the recovery cluster. Before creating an identical complex workload at the recovery cluster, ensure that the Site Controller Package is halted in the primary cluster. Split the data replication such that the target disk in the recovery cluster is in the Read/Write mode.

The procedure to split the replication depends on the type of arrays that are configured in the environment.

For information about splitting the replication on XP P9000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP A.11.00* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For information about splitting the replication on EVA P6000, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA A.05.01* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For information about splitting the replication on HP 3PAR Remote Copy, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with 3PAR Remote Copy* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

For information about splitting the replication on EMC SRDF, see *Building Disaster Recovery Serviceguard Solutions Using Metrocluster with EMC SRDF* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs>.

After configuring data replication using any one of the above arrays, the applications in the cluster that requires disaster recovery must be packaged with the appropriate Continentalclusters package module. This must be done in both the primary and the recovery clusters.

## Setting up redundant complex workload in the recovery cluster

After the Site Controller Package is created at the primary cluster, an identical complex workload and Site Controller Package must be created on the recovery cluster.

## Configuring the storage device for the complex workload at the recovery cluster

The storage device for complex workload must be configured for the data of the complex workload from the replicated disks at the recovery cluster. The procedure to configure the storage device differs depending on whether CFS, CVM, or SLVM is used.

### Configuring the storage device using CFS or SG SMS CVM

The procedure on the CVM cluster master node in the recovery cluster as follows:

1. Import the diskgroup.  
`# vxdg -stfC import <cvm_dg_name>`
2. Create a package configuration file.  
`# cmmakepkg -m sg/cfs_all /etc/cmcluster/cfspkg1.ascii`
3. Edit the following package parameters in the `cfspkg1.ascii` package configuration file.

```
node_name <node3>
node_name <node4>
package_name <siteB_cfs_pkg_name>
cvm_disk_group <cvm_dg_name>
cvm_activation_mode <cvm_mount_point>
cfs_volume <cvm_dg_name>/<cvm_dg_vol_name>
cfs_mount_options "node3=cluster node4=cluster"
cfs_primary_policy
```

where `node3` and `node4` are the nodes at the recovery cluster.

Do not configure any mount specific attributes such as `cfs_mount_point` and `cfs_mount_options` if the storage deployment requires only CVM raw volumes.

4. Verify the package configuration file.  
`# cmcheckconf -P cfspkg1.ascii`
5. Apply the package configuration file.  
`# cmapplyconf -P cfspkg1.ascii`
6. Run the package.  
`# cmrunpkg <siteB_cfs_pkg_name>`

### Configuring the storage device using Veritas CVM

To import CVM disk groups on the nodes in the recovery cluster and to create a Serviceguard CVM disk group package:

1. From the CVM master node at the recovery cluster, import the disk groups used by the complex workload.
 

```
# vxdg -stfC import <cvm_dg_name>
```
  2. Create Serviceguard disk group modular MNP packages for the CVM disk group.
- 
- ① **IMPORTANT:** Veritas CVM disk groups must be configured in a dedicated modular MNP package using the `cvm_dg` attribute. This modular MNP package must be configured to have a package dependency on the SG-CFS-pkg SMNP package.
- 

## Configuring the storage device using SLVM

To import volume groups on the nodes in the recovery cluster:

1. Export the volume groups on the primary cluster without removing the special device files:

```
# vgchange -a n <vg_name>
# vgexport -s -p -m <map_file_name> <vg_name>
```

Ensure that the map files are copied to all the nodes in the recovery cluster.

2. On the recovery cluster, import the VGs on all systems that will run the Serviceguard complex workload package.

```
# vgimport -s -m <map_file_name> <vg_name>
```

To activate LVM or SLVM volume groups in the recovery cluster, the cluster ID of the LVM or SLVM volume groups must be changed as shown in the following sample. For LVM volume groups, run the following commands to modify the cluster ID:

```
# vgchange -c n <vg_name>
# vgchange -c y <vg_name>
```

For SLVM volume groups, run the following commands to modify the cluster ID:

```
# vgchange -c n -S n <vg_name>
# vgchange -c y -S y <vg_name>
```

## Configuring the identical complex workload stack at the recovery cluster

The complex workload must be packaged as Serviceguard MNP or failover packages. This creates the complex workload stack at the recovery cluster that will be configured to be managed by the Site Controller Package.

Halting the complex workload on the recovery cluster must halt the complex workload stack on the recovery cluster, so that it can be restarted at the primary cluster. Halt all the packages related to complex workload using the `cmhaltpkg` command.

## Configuring the Site Controller package in the recovery cluster

The procedure for configuring the Site Controller Package in the recovery cluster is identical to configuring the Site Controller Package in the primary cluster. For information about configuring the Site Controller Package, see [“Configuring the Site Controller Package in the primary cluster”](#) (page 49).

## Configuring Site Safety Latch dependencies

The procedure to configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the recovery cluster is identical to the procedure for configuring the dependencies in the primary cluster. For information about configuring these dependencies, see [“Configuring the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the primary cluster”](#) (page 49).

## Resuming the replication to the recovery cluster

Ensure that the Site Controller package and complex workload are halted on the recovery cluster. Re-synchronize the replicated disk in the recovery cluster from the source disk in the primary cluster for the replication. The procedure to resume the replication depends on the type of arrays that are configured in the environment.

Based on the arrays in your environment, see the respective manuals to resume the replication.

## Configuring Continentalclusters

After the complex workload is configured along with the Site Controller Package on both the primary and recovery clusters, ensure that the Continentalclusters software is installed in all the nodes in both clusters. The Continentalclusters is configured between primary and recovery clusters. For more information about configuring Continentalclusters, see [“Building the Continentalclusters configuration”](#) (page 10).

# 7 Administering Continentalclusters

## Checking the status of clusters, nodes, and packages

To verify the status of the Continentalclusters and associated packages, use the `cmviewconcl` command, which lists the status of the clusters, associated package status, and status of the configured events. This command also displays, if configured, the mode of the recovery group.

The following is an example output of the `cmviewconcl` command in a situation where there is a single recovery group for which the primary cluster is `cjc838` and the recovery cluster is `cjc1234`.

```
# cmviewconcl
```

```
WARNING: Primary cluster cjc838 is in an alarm state
         (cmrecovercl is enabled on recovery cluster cjc1234)
```

```
Continentalclusters cjcccl
RECOVERY CLUSTER cjc1234
```

```
PRIMARY CLUSTER STATUS EVENT LEVEL POLLING INTERVAL
cjc838 down ALARM 20
```

```
PACKAGE RECOVERY GROUP prg1
```

```
MAINTENANCE MODE NO
PACKAGE ROLE STATUS cjc838/primary primary down
cjc1234/recovery recovery up
cjc1234/rehearsal rehearsal down
```

The following is an example of `cmviewconcl` output from a primary cluster that is down.

```
cmviewconcl -v
```

```
WARNING: Primary cluster cjc838 is in an alarm state
         (cmrecovercl is enabled on recovery cluster cjc1234)
```

```
Primary cluster cjc838 is not configured to monitor recovery
cluster cjc1234
```

```
Continentalclusters cjcccl
RECOVERY CLUSTER cjc1234
```

```
PRIMARY CLUSTER STATUS EVENT LEVEL POLLING INTERVAL
cjc838 down ALARM 20
```

```
CONFIGURED EVENT STATUS DURATION LAST NOTIFICATION SENT
alert unreachable 15 sec --
alarm unreachable 30 sec --
alarm down 0 sec Fri May 12 12:13:06 PDT 2000
alert error 0 sec --
alert up 20 sec --
alert up 40 sec --
```

```
PACKAGE RECOVERY GROUP prg1
```

```
MAINTENANCE MODE NO
PACKAGE ROLE
STATUS cjc838/primary
primary down
cjc1234/recovery recovery up
cjc1234/rehearsal rehearsal down
```

The following is the output of the `cmviewconcl` command that displays data for a mutual recovery configuration in which each cluster has both the primary and the recovery roles—the primary role for one recovery group and the recovery role for the other recovery group:

```
Continentalclusters ccluster1
```

```
RECOVERY CLUSTER PTST_dts1
```

| PRIMARY CLUSTER | STATUS      | EVENT LEVEL | POLLING INTERVAL |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|------------------|
| PTST_sanfran    | Unmonitored | unmonitored | 1 min            |

| CONFIGURED EVENT | STATUS      | DURATION | LAST NOTIFICATION SENT |
|------------------|-------------|----------|------------------------|
| alert            | unreachable | 1 min    | --                     |
| alert            | unreachable | 2 min    | --                     |
| alarm            | unreachable | 3 min    | --                     |
| alert            | down        | 1 min    | --                     |
| alert            | down        | 2 min    | --                     |
| alarm            | down        | 3 min    | --                     |
| alert            | error       | 0 sec    | --                     |
| alert            | up          | 1 min    | --                     |

| RECOVERY CLUSTER | PTST_sanfran | STATUS      | EVENT LEVEL | POLLING INTERVAL |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|------------------|
| PRIMARY CLUSTER  |              | Unmonitored | unmonitored | 1 min            |
| PTST_dts1        |              | Unmonitored | unmonitored | 1 min            |

| CONFIGURED EVENT | STATUS      | DURATION | LAST NOTIFICATION SENT |
|------------------|-------------|----------|------------------------|
| alert            | unreachable | 1 min    | --                     |
| alert            | unreachable | 2 min    | --                     |
| alarm            | unreachable | 3 min    | --                     |
| alert            | down        | 1 min    | --                     |
| alert            | down        | 2 min    | --                     |
| alarm            | down        | 3 min    | --                     |
| alert            | error       | 0 sec    | --                     |
| alert            | up          | 1 min    | --                     |

| PACKAGE RECOVERY GROUP | hpgroup10 | PACKAGE               | ROLE     | STATUS |
|------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|----------|--------|
|                        |           | PTST_sanfran/PACKAGE1 | primary  | down   |
|                        |           | TST_dts1/PACKAGE1     | recovery | down   |

| PACKAGE RECOVERY GROUP | hpgroup20 | PACKAGE                   | ROLE     | STATUS |
|------------------------|-----------|---------------------------|----------|--------|
|                        |           | PTST_dts1/PACKAGE1x_ld    | primary  | down   |
|                        |           | PTST_sanfran/PACKAGE1x_ld | recovery | down   |

For a more comprehensive status of component clusters, nodes, and packages, use the `cmviewcl` command on both the clusters. On each cluster, note the nodes on which the primary packages are running on, as well as data sender and data receiver packages, if they are being used for logical data replication. Verify that the monitor is running on every cluster on which it is configured.

The following is an example of output of the `cmviewcl` command for a cluster (*nycluster*) that is running a monitor package. Note that the recovery package *salespkg\_bak* is not running, and is shown as an unowned package. This is the expected display while the other cluster is running *salespkg*.

| CLUSTER   | STATUS |
|-----------|--------|
| nycluster | up     |

| NODE    | STATUS | STATE   |
|---------|--------|---------|
| nynode1 | up     | running |

Network Parameters:

| INTERFACE | STATUS | PATH | NAME |
|-----------|--------|------|------|
| PRIMARY   | up     | 12.1 | lan0 |
| PRIMARY   | up     | 56.1 | lan2 |

| NODE    | STATUS | STATE:  |
|---------|--------|---------|
| nynode2 | up     | running |

Network Parameters:

```

INTERFACE      STATUS      PATH      NAME
PRIMARY        up          4.1       lan0
PRIMARY        up          56.1      lan1

PACKAGE        STATUS      STATE      PKG_SWITCH  NODE
ccmonpkg       up          running    enabled     nynode2

Script_Parameters:
ITEM           NAME              STATUS      MAX_RESTARTS  RESTARTS
Service        ccmonpkg.srv      up          20            0

Node_Switching_Parameters:
NODE_TYPE      STATUS      SWITCHING    NAME
Primary        up          enabled      nynode2 (current)
Alternate      up          enabled      nynode1

UNOWNED Packages:
PACKAGE        STATUS      STATE      PKG_SWITCH  NODE
salespkg_bak  down       unowned

Policy_Parameters:
POLICY_NAME    CONFIGURED_VALUE
Failover       unknown
Failback       unknown

Script_Parameters:
ITEM           STATUS      NODE_NAME    NAME
Subnet         unknown     nynode1      195.14.171.0
Subnet         unknown     nynode2      195.14.171.0

Node_Switching_Parameters:
NODE_TYPE      STATUS      SWITCHING    NAME
Primary        down       nynode1
Alternate      down       nynode2

```

Use the `ps` command to verify the status of the Continentalclusters monitor daemons `cmclsenryd` which must be running on the cluster node where the monitor package is running.

## Notes on Packages in Continentalclusters

Packages have different behavior in Continentalclusters than in a normal Serviceguard environment. There are specific differences in

- Startup and Switching Characteristics
- Network Attributes

From Continentalclusters version A.0.08.00 and above, you can configure the following package types in a recovery group:

- Failover
- Oracle RAC Multi-node packages
- Complex workloads using SADTA

For details, see [“Configuring complex workloads in a Continentalclusters environment using SADTA”](#) (page 43).

In the case of a multi-node package, a recovery process recovers all instances of the package in a recovery cluster.



---

**NOTE:**

- System multi-node packages cannot be configured in Continentalclusters recovery groups. Multi-node packages are supported only for Oracle with CFS or CVM environments.
  - Starting with Continentalclusters version A.08.00, packages in Continentalclusters can be configured as modular packages.
- 

## Startup and Switching Characteristics

Normally, an application (package) can run on only one node at a time in a cluster. However, in Continentalclusters, there are two clusters in which an application—the primary package or the recovery package—could operate on the same data. *Both the primary and the recovery package must not be allowed to run at the same time.* To prevent this, it is important to ensure that packages are not allowed to start automatically and are not started at inappropriate times.

To keep packages from starting up automatically, when a cluster starts, set the `AUTO_RUN` (`PKG_SWITCHING_ENABLED` used prior to Serviceguard A.11.12 parameter for all primary and recovery packages) to `NO`. Then use the `cmmodpkg` command with the `-e <packagename>` option to start up only the primary packages and enable switching. The `cmrecovercl` command, when run, will start up the recovery packages and enable switching during the cluster recovery operation.

- △ CAUTION:** After initial testing is complete, the `cmrunpkg` and `cmmodpkg` commands or the equivalent options in Serviceguard Manager should *never* be used to start a recovery package unless cluster recovery has already taken place.
- 

To prevent packages from being started at the wrong time and in the wrong place, use the following strategies:

- Set the `AUTO_RUN` (`PKG_SWITCHING_ENABLED` used prior to Serviceguard A.11.12 parameter for all primary and recovery packages) to `NO`.
- Ensure that recovery package names are well known, and that personnel understand they should never be started with a `cmrunpkg` or `cmmodpkg` command unless the `cmrecovercl` command has been invoked first.
- If a cluster has no packages to run before recovery, then do not allow packages to be run on that cluster with Serviceguard Manager.

## Network Attributes

Another important difference between the packages configured in Continentalclusters and the packages configured in a standard Serviceguard cluster is that the same or different subnets can be used for primary cluster and recovery cluster configurations. In addition, the same or different relocatable IP addresses can be used for the primary package and its corresponding recovery package. The client application must be designed properly to connect to the appropriate IP address following a recovery operation. For recovery groups with a rehearsal package configured, ensure that the rehearsal package IP address is different from the recovery package IP address.

## Enabling and disabling maintenance mode

Any recovery group in Continentalclusters is moved into maintenance mode using `cmrecovercl` command with `-d` option. The `-d` flag is used to disable recovery of the recovery groups.

For Example:

```
# cmrecovercl -d recovery_group1
```

Any recovery group in Continentalclusters is moved out of maintenance mode using `cmrecovercl` command with `-e` option. The `-e` flag is used to enable recovery of the recovery groups.

For Example:

```
# cmrecovercl -e recovery_group1
```

## Recovering a cluster when the storage array or disks fail

If the monitored cluster returns to UP status following an alert or alarm, but it is certain that the primary packages cannot start (say, because of damage to the disks on the primary site), then use a special procedure to initiate recovery:

1. Use the `cmhaltcl` command to halt the primary cluster.
2. Wait for the monitor to send an alert.
3. Use the `cmrecovercl -f` command to perform recovery.

After the `cmrecovercl` command is run, Continentalclusters displays a warning message, such as the following and prompts for a verification that recovery should proceed (the names "LAcluster" and "NYcluster" are examples).

```
WARNING: This command will take over for the primary cluster "LAcluster"
by starting the recovery package on the recovery cluster "NYCluster. You
must follow your site disaster recovery procedure to ensure that the
primary packages on "LAcluster" are not running and that recovery on
"NYCluster" is necessary. Continuing with this command while the
applications are running on the primary cluster may result in data
corruption. Are you sure that the primary packages are not running and
will not come back, and are you certain that you want to start the
recovery packages? [Y/N].
```

Reply `Y` to proceed only if you are certain that recovery should take place. After replying `Y`, a group of messages will appear as shown below.

```
As the processing of each recovery group occurs (the message about the data receiver package
appears only using logical data replication with data sender and receiver packages): Processing
the recovery group nfsgroup on recovery cluster eastcoast. Disabling
switching for data receiver package nfsreceiverpkg on recovery cluster
eastcoast. Halting data receiver package nfsreceiverpkg on recovery cluster
east coast. Starting recovery package nfsbackuppkg on recovery cluster
eastcoast. Enabling package nfsbackuppkg in cluster
eastcoast.-----exit status = 0-----
```

The command `cmrecovercl` starts up all the recovery packages that are configured in the recovery groups. The `cmrecovercl -c` command skips recovery for recovery groups in maintenance mode.

In addition to starting the recovery packages all at once, another option is to recover an individual recovery group by using the following command:

```
# cmrecovercl -g Recovery_Group_Name
```

Running the `cmrecovercl` command with option `-g` starts up only the recovery package configured in the specified recovery group. The `cmrecovercl -g` command fails to recover if the specified recovery group is in maintenance mode.

---

**NOTE:** After the `cmrecovercl` command is run, there is a delay of at least 90 seconds *per recovery group* as the command makes sure that the package is not active on another cluster.

Use the `cmviewcl` command on the local cluster to confirm that the recovery packages are running correctly.

---

## Starting a recovery package forcefully

You can use the `cmforceconcl` command to force a Continentalclusters package to start even if the status of a remote package in the recovery group is unknown. This command is used as a prefix with the `cmrunpkg` and `cmmodpkg` command.

Under normal circumstances, Continentalclusters does not allow a package to start in the recovery cluster unless it can determine that the package is not running in the primary cluster. In some cases, communication between the two clusters might be lost, and it might be necessary to start the package on the recovery cluster anyway. To do this, use the `cmforceconcl` command, which is used along with a `cmrunpkg` or `cmmodpkg` command, as in the following example:

```
# cmforceconcl cmrunpkg -n node3 Pkg1
```

- △ CAUTION:** When using the `cmforceconcl` command, ensure that the other cluster is not running the package. Failure to do this might result in the package running in both clusters, which causes data corruption.

## Adding or Removing a Node from a Cluster

To add a node or to remove a node from Continentalclusters, use the following procedure:

1. Halt any monitor packages that are running.  

```
# cmhaltpkg ccomonpkg
```
2. Add or remove the node in a cluster by editing the Serviceguard cluster configuration file and applying the configuration.  

```
# cmapplyconf -C cluster.config
```
3. Edit the Continentalclusters configuration ASCII file to add or remove the node in the cluster.
4. If a new node is added, then setup SSH equivalence as described in the [“Sample Continentalclusters Configuration”](#) (page 11).  
If a node is removed, delete Continentalclusters user along with its HOME directory to remove all SSH credentials.
5. Verify and apply the configuration using the `cmcheckconcl` and `cmapplyconcl` commands.
6. Restart the monitor packages.
7. View the status of Continentalclusters.  

```
# cmviewconcl
```

## Adding a Recovery Group to Continentalclusters

To add a new package to the Continentalclusters configuration, it is necessary to configure a new primary package and recovery package. Then, you must add a new recovery group to the Continentalclusters configuration file. In addition, it is necessary to ensure that the data replication is provided for the new package, using either software based replication or array based replication.

Adding a new package does not require bringing down either cluster. However, to implement the new configuration:

1. Configure data replication for the applications to be configured as packages.
2. Configure the new primary and recovery packages by creating and editing package configuration files.
3. Use `cmapplyconf` command to add the primary package to one cluster, and the recovery package to the other cluster.
4. Create a new recovery group in the Continentalclusters configuration ASCII file.
5. Halt the monitor packages on both clusters.
6. Use the `cmapplyconcl` command to apply the edited Continentalclusters configuration file.
7. Restart the monitor packages on both the clusters.
8. View the status of the Continentalclusters.  

```
# cmviewconcl
```

## Modifying a package in a recovery group

There might be situations where a package must be halted for modifications purposes without having the package moved to another node. The following procedure is recommended for package maintenance and normal maintenance of Continentalclusters:

1. Shut down the package with the appropriate command.

For example,

```
# cmhaltpkg <pkgname>
```

2. Perform the changes to the packages in primary and recovery cluster.
3. Distribute the package configuration changes, if any.

For example,

In Primary cluster

```
# cmapplyconf - P <pkgconfig>
```

In Recovery cluster

```
# cmapplyconf -P <bkpkgconfig>
```

4. Run the package with the any one of the following Serviceguard command.

For example,

In Primary cluster

```
# cmmodpkg -e <pkgname>
```

In Recovery cluster

```
# cmrunpkg <pkgname>
```

---

**⚠ CAUTION:** Never enable package switching on both the primary package and the recovery package.

---

## Modifying Continentalclusters configuration

1. Halt the monitor package.  

```
# cmhaltpkg ccmopkg
```
2. Apply the new Continentalclusters configuration.  

```
# cmapplyconcl -C <configfile>
```
3. Restart the monitor package.  

```
# cmrunpkg ccmopkg
```

## Removing a recovery group from the Continentalclusters

To remove a package from the Continentalclusters configuration, you must remove the recovery group from the Continentalclusters configuration file.

To remove the package it is not necessary to bring down either cluster. However, to implement the new configuration:

1. Remove the recovery group from the Continentalclusters configuration file.
2. Halt the monitor packages that are running on the clusters.
3. Use the `cmapplyconcl` command to apply the new Continentalclusters configuration.
4. Restart the monitor packages on both clusters.

5. Use the Serviceguard `cmdeleteconf` command to remove every package in the recovery group.
6. View the status of the Continentalclusters.  
`# cmviewconcl`

## Removing a rehearsal package from a recovery group

To remove a rehearsal package from a recovery group:

1. Move the recovery group out of maintenance mode using the `cmrecovercl -e` command.
2. Delete the rehearsal package from the recovery cluster using the `cmdeleteconf` command.
3. Edit the Continentalclusters configuration ASCII file to remove the `REHEARSAL_PACKAGE` parameter.
4. Apply the edited configuration ASCII file using the `cmapplyconcl` command.

## Modifying a recovery group with a new rehearsal package

To change the rehearsal package configured for a recovery group:

1. Move the recovery group out of maintenance mode using the `cmrecovercl -e` command.
2. Delete the rehearsal package from the recovery cluster using the `cmdeleteconf` command.
3. Create the new rehearsal package by following the steps in “[Configuring Continentalclusters rehearsal packages](#)” (page 38) section.
4. Edit the Continentalclusters configuration ASCII file to replace the `REHEARSAL_PACKAGE` parameter with the new rehearsal package name.
5. Apply the edited configuration ASCII file using the `cmapplyconcl` command.

## Changing monitoring definitions

You can change the monitoring definitions in the configuration without bringing down either cluster. This includes adding, removing, or changing the cluster events, changing the timings, and adding, removing, or changing the notification messages.

To change the monitoring definitions:

1. Edit the Continentalclusters configuration file to incorporate the new or changed monitoring definitions.
2. Halt the monitor packages on both clusters.
3. Use the `cmapplyconcl` command to apply the new configuration.
4. Restart the monitor packages on both clusters.
5. View the status of the Continentalclusters.

```
# cmviewconcl
```

## Behavior of Serviceguard commands in Continentalclusters

Continentalclusters packages are manipulated manually by the user via Serviceguard commands and by `cmclld` automatically in the same way as any other packages.

In Continentalclusters the recovery package is not allowed to run at the same time as the primary, data sender, or data receiver packages. To enforce this, several Serviceguard commands behave in a slightly different manner when used in Continentalclusters.

[Table 1](#) describes the Serviceguard commands whose behavior is different in Continentalclusters environment. Specifically, when one of the commands listed in [Table 1](#) attempts to start or enable switching of a package, it first verifies the status of the other packages in the recovery group. Based on the status, the operation is either allowed or disallowed.

The verification is done based on the stable clusters' environment and the proper functioning of the network communication. In case the network communication between clusters can not be established or the cluster or package status cannot be determined, manual verification must be done to ensure that the operation to be performed on the target package will not have a conflict with other packages configured in the same recovery group.

**Table 1 Serviceguard and Continentalclusters Commands**

| Command                    | How the command works in Serviceguard                        | How the command works in Continentalclusters                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cmrunpkg</code>      | Runs a package.                                              | Will not start a recovery package if any of the primary, data receiver, or data sender package in the same recovery group is running or enabled. Will not start recovery package if the recovery group is in maintenance mode. Will not start a primary, data receiver, or data sender package if the recovery package in the same recovery group is running or enabled. Will not start a rehearsal package when the recovery group is not in maintenance mode.                                                |
| <code>cmmodpkg -e</code>   | Enables switching attribute for a highly available package.  | Will not enable switching on a recovery package if any of the primary, data receiver, or data sender package in the same recovery group is running or enabled. Will not enable switching for a recovery package if the recovery group is in maintenance mode. Will not enable a primary, data receiver, or data sender package if the recovery package in the same recovery group is running or enabled. Will not enable switching for a rehearsal package when the recovery group is not in maintenance mode. |
| <code>cmhaltnode -f</code> | Halts a node in a highly available cluster.                  | Will not re-enable switching on a recovery package if any of the primary, data receiver, or data sender package in the same recovery group is running or enabled. Will not re-enable a primary, data receiver, or data sender package if the recovery package in the same recovery group is running or enabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>cmhaltcl -f</code>   | This command halts daemons on all currently running systems. | Will not re-enable switching on a recovery package if any of the primary, data receiver, or data sender package in the same recovery group is running or enabled. Will not re-enable a primary, data receiver, or data sender package if the recovery package in the same recovery group is running or enabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## Verifying the status of Continentalclusters daemons

Use the `ps` command to verify the status of the Continentalclusters monitor daemons `cmclsenryd`, which must be running on the cluster node where the monitor package is running.

For Example:

```
# ps -ef | grep cmclsenryd
```

Use the `ps` command to verify the status of the Continentalclusters daemon `cmclapplyd` on all the nodes in Continentalclusters. This daemon is started as part of the Continentalclusters installation and is required for applying the Continentalclusters configuration.

```
# ps -ef | grep cmclapplyd
```

## Renaming the Continentalclusters

To rename an existing Continentalclusters:

1. Remove the Continentalclusters configuration.

```
# cmdeleteconcl
```

2. Edit the `CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_NAME` field in the configuration ASCII file, and run the `cmapplyconcl` command to configure the Continentalclusters with a new name.

## Deleting the Continentalclusters configuration

The `cmdeleteconcl` command is used to delete the configuration on all the nodes in the Continentalclusters configuration. To delete Continentalclusters and the Continentalclusters configuration run the following command.

```
# cmdeleteconcl
```

While deleting a Continentalclusters configuration with the recovery group maintenance feature, the shared disk is not removed. Before applying a fresh Continentalclusters configuration using an old shared disk, you must re-initialize the file system in the shared disk using the `mkfs` command.

## Checking the Version Number of the Continentalclusters Executables

For Continentalclusters version A.08.00, use `what` command to get the versions of the executables.

For example,

```
# what /usr/sbin/cmviewconcl
```

## Maintaining the data replication environment

Continentalclusters supports the pre-integrated physical replication solutions using Continuous Access P9000 and XP, Continuous Access EVA, EMC Symmetrix Remote Data Facility, and 3PAR Remote Copy.

- See, “[Maintaining Continuous Access P9000 and XP Data Replication Environment](#)” (page 63) for administering Continentalclusters when the Continentalclusters solution is built on Continuous Access P9000 and XP for the physical data replication.
- See, “[Maintaining Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA P6000 data replication environment](#)” (page 65) for administering Continentalclusters when the Continentalclusters solution uses Continuous Access EVA.
- See, “[Maintaining EMC SRDF data replication environment](#)” (page 66) for administering Continentalclusters when the Continentalclusters uses EMC SRDF data replication solution.
- See, “[Maintaining 3PAR Remote Copy data replication environment](#)” (page 66) for administering Continentalclusters when the Continentalclusters uses 3PAR Remote Copy data replication solution.

## Maintaining Continuous Access P9000 and XP Data Replication Environment

### Resynchronizing the device group

After certain failures, data is no longer remotely protected. In order to restore disaster-tolerant data protection after repairing or recovering from the failure, you must manually run the command `pairresync`. This command must run successfully for disaster-tolerant data protection to be restored. Following is a partial list of failures that require running the `pairresync` command to restore disaster-tolerant data protection:

- Failure of ALL Continuous Access links without restart of the application.
- Failure of ALL Continuous Access links with Fence Level `DATA` with restart of the application on a primary host.
- Failure of the entire recovery Data Center for a given application package.
- Failure of the recovery P9000 and XP disk array for a given application package while the application is running on a primary host.

Following is a partial list of failures that require full resynchronization to restore disaster-tolerant data protection. Resynchronization is automatically initiated by moving the application package back to its primary host after repairing the failure.

- Failure of the entire primary Data Center for a given application package.
- Failure of all of the primary hosts for a given application package.
- Failure of the primary P9000 and XP disk array for a given application package.
- Failure of all Continuous Access links with application restart on a secondary host.

---

**NOTE:** The preceding steps are automated provided the default value of 1 is being used for the auto variable `AUTO_PSUEPSUS`. After the Continuous Access link failure is fixed, you must halt the package at the failover site and restart on the primary site. However, if you want to reduce downtime, you must manually invoke `pairresync` before failback.

---

Full resynchronization must be *manually* initiated (as described in the next section) after repairing the following failures:

- Failure of the recovery P9000 and XP disk array for a given application package followed by application startup on a primary host.
- Failure of *all* Continuous Access links with Fence Level `NEVER` or `ASYN` with restart of the application on a primary host.

Pairs must be manually recreated if both the primary and recovery P9000 and XP disk arrays are in the `SMPL` (simplex) state.

Ensure you periodically review the following files for messages, warnings, and recommended actions. HP recommends to review these files after system, data center, and application failures.

- `/var/adm/syslog/syslog.log`
- `/etc/cmcluster/<package-name>/<package-name>.log`
- `/etc/cmcluster/<bkpackage-name>/<bkpackage-name>.log`

## Using the `pairresync` command

The `pairresync` command can be used with special options after a failover in which the recovery site has started the application and has processed transaction data on the disk at the recovery site, but the disks on the primary site are intact. After the Continuous Access link is fixed, depending on which site you are on, use the `pairresync` command in one of the following two ways:

- `pairresync -swapp`—from the primary site.
- `pairresync -swaps`—from the failover site.

These options take advantage of the fact that the recovery site maintains a bit-map of the modified data sectors on the recovery array. Either version of the command will swap the personalities of the volumes, with the PVOL becoming the SVOL and SVOL becoming the PVOL. With the personalities swapped, data written to the volume on the failover site (now PVOL) are copied to the SVOL, which is now running on the primary site. During this time, the package continues running on the failover site. After resynchronization is complete, you can halt the package on the failover site, and restart it on the primary site. Metrocluster swaps the personalities between the PVOL and the SVOL, returning PVOL status to the primary site.

## Additional points

- This toolkit might increase package startup time by 5 minutes or more. Packages with many disk devices will take longer to start up than those with fewer devices because of the time required to get device status from the P9000 and XP disk array or to synchronize.



---

**NOTE:** Long delays in package startup time will occur in situations when recovering from broken pair affinity.

---

- The value of `RUN_SCRIPT_TIMEOUT` in the package ASCII file must be set to `NO_TIMEOUT` or to a large enough value to take into consideration the extra startup time required for getting status information from the P9000 and XP disk array. (See the earlier paragraph for more information on the extra startup time).
- Online cluster configuration changes might require a Raid Manager configuration file to be changed. Whenever the configuration file is changed, the Raid Manager instance *must* be stopped and restarted. The Raid Manager instance *must* be running *before* any Continentalclusters package movement occurs.
- A file system must not reside on more than one P9000 and XP frames for *either* the PVOL or the SVOL. An LVM Logical Volume (LV) must not reside on more than one P9000 and XP frames for *either* the PVOL or the SVOL.
- The application is responsible for data integrity, and must use the `O_SYNC` flag when ordering of I/Os is important. Most relational database products are examples of applications that ensure data integrity by using the `O_SYNC` flag.
- Each host must be connected to only the P9000 and XP disk array that contains *either* the PVOL or the SVOL. A given host must *not* be connected to both the PVOL and the SVOL of a Continuous Access pair.

## Maintaining Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA P6000 data replication environment

While the package is running, the package might halt because of unexpected conditions in the Continuous Access EVA volumes caused by a manual storage failover on Continuous Access EVA outside of Metrocluster Continuous Access EVA software. HP recommends that manual storage failover must not be performed while the package is running.

A manual change of Continuous Access EVA link state from suspend to resume is allowed to re-establish data replication while the package is running.

### Continuous Access EVA Link Suspend and Resume Modes

Upon Continuous Access links recovery, Continuous Access EVA automatically normalizes (the Continuous Access EVA term for “synchronizes”) the source Vdisk and destination Vdisk data.

If the log disk is not full, when a Continuous Access connection is re-established, the contents of the log are written to the destination Vdisk to synchronize it with the source Vdisk. This process of writing the log contents, in the order that the writes occurred, is called merging. Since write ordering is maintained, the data on the destination Vdisk is consistent while merging is in progress.

If the log disk is full, when a Continuous Access connection is re-established, a full copy from the source Vdisk is done to the destination Vdisk. Since a full copy is done at the block level, the data on the destination Vdisk is not consistent until the copy completes.

If all Continuous Access links fail and if failsafe mode is disabled, the application package continues to run and writes new I/O to source Vdisk. The virtual log in EVA controller collects host write commands and data; DR group's log state changes from normal to logging. When a DR group is in a logging state, the log grows in proportion to the amount of write I/O being sent to the source Vdisks. If the links are down for a long time, the log disk might be full, and full copy happens automatically upon link recovery. If primary site fails while copy is in progress, the data in destination Vdisk is not consistent, and is not usable. To prevent this, after all the Continuous Access links fail, HP recommends manually setting the Continuous Access link state to suspend mode by using the Command View EVA UI. When Continuous Access link is in suspend state, Continuous Access EVA does not try to normalize the source and destination Vdisks upon links recovery until you manually change the link state to resume mode.

## Maintaining EMC SRDF data replication environment

### Normal Startup

The following is the normal Continentalclusters startup procedure. On the source disk site:

1. Start the source disk site.

```
# cmruncl -v
```

The source disk site comes up with `ccmonpkg` up. The application packages are down, and `ccmonpkg` is up.

2. Manually start application packages on the source disk site.

```
# cmmodpkg -e <Application_pkgname>
```

3. Confirm source disk site status.

```
# cmviewcl -v
```

and

```
# cmviewconcl -v
```

4. Verify SRDF Links.

```
# symrdf list
```

On the *target disk site*, do the following:

1. Start the target disk site.

```
# cmruncl -v
```

The target disk site comes up with `ccmonpkg` up. The application packages are in halted state, and `ccmonpkg` is running.

2. Do not manually start application packages on the target disk site; this will cause *data corruption*.

3. Confirm target disk site status.

```
# cmviewcl -v
```

and

```
# cmviewconcl -v
```

## Maintaining 3PAR Remote Copy data replication environment

While the package is running, a manual storage failover on Remote Copy volume group outside of Metrocluster with 3PAR Remote Copy software can cause the package to halt due to unexpected condition of the 3PAR Remote Copy virtual volumes. HP recommends that no manual storage failover be performed while the package is running.

If the Remote Copy replication was stopped due to link failures, you can manually start the replication even while the package is running. You do not have to manually start the replication if the `auto_recover` option is set for the Remote Copy volume group.

### Viewing the Remote Copy volume group details

To associate the Remote Copy volume group name with the package, run the `cmgetpkgenv` command:

```
# cmgetpkgenv <pkg_name>
```

To list the various properties of 3PAR Remote Copy volume group, run the CLI command `showrcopy` command.

You can view the Remote Copy volume group details using HP 3PAR Management Console.

## Remote Copy Link Failure and Resume Modes

When the link is failed, snapshots are created for all the primary volumes, but not for the secondary volumes while replication is stopped. When replication is restarted for the volume, all differences between the base volume and the snapshot taken when the replication was stopped are sent over in order to resynchronize the secondary volume with the primary volume.

When the Remote Copy links are recovered, HP 3PAR Remote Copy automatically restarts the replication if the `auto_recover` policy is set. If the `auto_recover` policy is not set, when the links are restored, you can copy any writes from the primary to the secondary groups by running the `startcopygroup` command on the system that holds the primary group to resynchronize the primary and secondary groups.

## Restoring replication after a failover

When the primary package fails over to the remote site and the links are not up or the primary storage system is not up, Metrocluster runs the `setcopygroup failover` command. This command changes the role of the Remote Copy volume group on the storage system in the recovery site from `Secondary` to `Primary-Rev`. In this role, the data is not replicated from the recovery site to the primary site. After the links are restored or the primary storage system is restored, manually run the `setcopygroup recover` command on the storage system in the recovery site to resynchronize the data from the recovery site to the primary site. This results in the change of the role of the Remote Copy volume group on the storage system in the primary site from "Primary" to "Secondary-Rev".

- 
- △ CAUTION:** When the roles are `Secondary-Rev` and `Primary-Rev`, a disaster on the recovery site results in a failure of the Metrocluster package. To avoid this, immediately halt the package on the recovery site and start it up on the primary site. This will restore the role of the Remote Copy volume group to its original role of `Primary` and `Secondary`.
- 

## Administering Continentalclusters using SADTA configuration

This section elaborates the procedures that must be followed to administer a SADTA configuration in which complex workloads other than Oracle RAC are configured.

### Maintaining a Node

To perform maintenance procedures on a cluster node, the node must be removed from the cluster. Run the `cmhaltnode -f` command to move the node out of the cluster. This command halts the complex workload package instance running on the node. As long as there are other nodes in the site and the Site Controller Package is still running on the site, the site aware disaster recovery workload continues to run with one less instance on the same site.

Once the node maintenance procedures are complete, join the node to the cluster using the `cmrunnode` command. If the Site Controller Package is running on the site that the node belongs to, the active complex-workload package instances on the site must be manually started on the restarted node since the `auto_run` flag is set to `no`.

Prior to halting a node in the cluster, the Site Controller Package must be moved to a different node in the site. However, if the node that needs to be halted in the cluster is the last surviving node in the site, then the Site Controller Packages running on this node must be moved to the other site. In such scenarios, the site aware disaster recovery workload must be moved to the remote site before halting the node in the cluster. For more information on moving a site aware disaster recovery complex workload to a remote cluster, see the section [“Moving a Complex Workload to the Recovery Cluster” \(page 70\)](#).

### Maintaining the Site

Maintenance operation at a site might require that all the nodes on that site are down. In such scenarios, the site aware disaster tolerant workload can be started on the other site in the recovery

cluster to provide continuous service. For more information on moving a site aware disaster tolerant complex workload to a remote cluster, see [“Moving a Complex Workload to the Recovery Cluster”](#) (page 70).

## Maintaining Site Controller Package

The Site Controller Package is a Serviceguard failover package. The package attributes that can be modified online can be modified without halting the Site Controller package. Certain package attributes require that the Site Controller package is halted. Halting the Site Controller package halts the workload packages and closes the Site Safety Latch on the site. The `DETACH` mode flag allows the Site Controller package to halt without halting the workload packages.

To halt the Site Controller package in the `DETACH` mode as follows:

1. Identify the node where the Site Controller package is running.  
`# cmviewcl -p <site_controller_package_name>`
2. Log in to the node where the Site Controller package is running and go to the Site Controller package directory.  
`# cd <site_controller_package_directory>`
3. Run the HP-UX `touch` command with the `DETACH` flag, in the Site Controller package directory.  
`# touch DETACH`
4. Halt the Site Controller package.  
`# cmhaltpkg <site_controller_package_name>`

The Site Controller package halts without halting the complex workload packages. The Site Controller package leaves the Site Safety Latch open on this site. The `DETACH` mode file is automatically removed by the Site Controller package when it halts. After the maintenance procedures are complete, restart the Site Controller package in the same cluster where it was previously halted in the `DETACH` mode. You cannot start the Site Controller package on a different cluster node.

Commands to start the Site Controller package as follows:

```
# cmrunpkg <site_controller_package_name>
```

Enable global switching for the Site Controller package.

```
# cmmodpkg -e <site_controller_package_name>
```

When the Site Controller package is halted in the `DETACH` mode, the active complex workload configuration on the site can be halted and restarted at the same cluster as the Site Safety Latch is still open in the site.

## Moving the Site Controller Package to a Node in the local cluster

To complete maintenance operations on a node, there are instances where a node in the cluster needs to be brought down. In such cases, the Site Controller package that is running on the node needs to be moved to another node in the local cluster.

The procedure to move the Site Controller package to another node in the local cluster as follows:

1. Log in to the node where the Site Controller package is running and go to the Site Controller package directory.  
`# cd <site_controller_package_directory>`
2. Run the HP-UX `touch` command with the `DETACH` flag, in the Site Controller package directory.  
`# touch DETACH`

3. Halt the Site Controller package.
 

```
# cmhaltpkg <site_controller_package_name>
```
4. Log in to the other node in the local cluster, and start the Site Controller package.
 

```
# cmrunpkg <site_controller_package_name>
```

## Deleting the Site Controller Package

To remove a site controller package from the Continentalclusters configuration, you must first remove the associated recovery group from the Continentalclusters configuration file.

Removing the site controller package does not require you to bring down either cluster. However, in order to implement the new configuration, the following steps are required:

1. Edit the Continentalclusters configuration file, deleting the recovery group for the site controller package.
2. Halt the monitor packages that are running on the clusters.
3. Use the `cmapplyconcl` command to apply the new Continentalclusters configuration.
4. Restart the monitor packages on both clusters.
5. Halt the Site Controller Package.
6. Remove all the Site Safety Latch dependencies configured for the packages managed by the Site Controller Package.

Also remove the Site Controller EMS resource dependency from packages managed by the Site Controller Packages on both clusters.

For example, if you have CVM or CFS configured in your environment, run the following commands from a node on both clusters.

```
# cfsdgadm delete_ems pkg1dg /dts/mcsc/cw_sc
```

7. Delete Site Controller package.

Use the Serviceguard `cmddeleteconf` command in both the clusters to delete the Site Controller package configuration on all the nodes.

8. View the status of the Continentalclusters.

```
# cmviewconcl
```

## Starting a Complex Workload

The complex workload in SADTA can be started in a Continentalclusters by starting the Site Controller package.

The procedure to start the complex workload as follows:

1. Ensure that the Site Controller package is enabled on all the nodes in the cluster where the complex workload must be started.
 

```
# cmmodpkg -e -n <Primary_Cluster node 1> -n <Primary_Cluster node 2> <site_controller_package_name>
```
2. Start the Site Controller package by enabling it.
 

```
# cmmodpkg -e <site_controller_package_name>
```

The Site Controller Package starts on the preferred node in the cluster. At startup, the Site Controller package starts the corresponding complex-workload packages that are configured in that cluster. After the complex-workload packages are up, verify the package log files for any errors that will have occurred at startup.

## Shutting Down a Complex Workload

The complex workload in SADTA can be shut down by halting the corresponding Site Controller package.

To shutdown the complex workload, run the following command on any node in the cluster:

```
# cmhaltpkg <site_controller_package_name>
```

This command halts the Site Controller package and the current active complex-workload packages. After shutting down, verify the Site Controller package log file and the workload package log files to ensure that the complex workload has shut down appropriately.

## Moving a Complex Workload to the Recovery Cluster

To perform maintenance operations that require the entire site to be down, you can move the disaster tolerant complex workload to a remote cluster. To move the complex workload to a remote cluster, the local complex workload configuration must be first shut down and then the remote complex workload configuration must be started.

The procedure to move a complex workload to the recovery cluster as follows:

1. Halt the Site Controller package of the complex workload.

```
# cmhaltpkg <site_controller_package_name>
```

2. Ensure the complex-workload packages are halted successfully.

```
# cmviewcl -l package
```

3. Start the Site Controller package on a node in the recovery cluster.

```
# cmrunpkg <site_controller_package_name>
```

The Site Controller package starts up on a node in the recovery cluster and starts the complex-workload packages that are configured.

## Restarting a Failed Site Controller Package

If the running Site Controller package fails because of transient error conditions, restart the Site Controller package on a node in the cluster where it was previously running.

To restart the failed Site Controller Package as follows:

1. Determine the error message logged in the package log, and fix the problem.
2. Ensure that the Site Controller package is enabled on all the nodes in the site where it was failed.

```
# cmmmodpkg -e -n <node 1> -n <node 2> <site_controller_package_name>
```

3. Start the Site Controller package on a node in the same cluster where it was previously running.

```
# cmrunpkg <site_controller_package_name>
```

---

# 8 Troubleshooting Continentalclusters

## Reviewing Messages and Log Files

Starting with Continentalclusters A.08.00, logs messages into the standard output. Continentalclusters commands, such as `cmquerycl`, `cmcheckconcl`, `cmapplyconcl`, and `cmrecovercl` output.

Multiple log files are also used to log various operations. All log messages are stored in the `/var/adm/cmconcl/logs` directory with appropriate names. The `cmviewconcl` command logs messages in the `/var/adm/cmconcl/logs/cmviewconcl.log` file.

General information about Serviceguard operation is located at `var/adm/syslog/syslog.log` file.

## Reviewing Messages and Log Files of Monitoring Daemon

The monitoring daemon, by default, logs messages into the `/var/adm/cmconcl/logs/cmclentryd.log` file.

Review the monitor package log file at the location specified by `script_log_file` parameter. If you are using legacy monitoring package, the monitor package log file is `ccmonpkg.cntl.log` located at `/etc/cmcluster/ccmonpkg/` on any node where a Continentalclusters monitor is running.

## Reviewing Messages and Log Files of Packages in Recovery Groups

Information about the primary or recovery packages might be found in their respective package log files specified in the `script_log_file`. More information package start up will be present in the logs of split brain component of Continentalclusters. This log file is available at `/var/adm/cmconcl/logs/checkpkg.log`.

## Reviewing Logs of Notification Component

All notification messages associated with cluster events are reported in `/var/opt/resmon/log/cc/eventlog` on the cluster where monitoring is taken place. An example of output from this file follows:

```
>-----Event Monitoring Service Event Notification -----<
Notification Time: Wed Nov 10 21:00:39 1999
system1 sent Event Monitor notification information:
/cluster/concl/ccluster1/clusters/LAclust/status/unreachable is = 15
User Comments:
Cluster "LAclust" has status "unreachable" for 15 sec
>-----End Event Monitoring Service Event Notification -----<
```

In addition, if you have defined a TEXTLOG destination, notification messages are sent to the file that were specified.

The Continentalclusters EMS resource monitor logs messages to the `/etc/opt/resmon/log/api.log` and the registrar logs messages to the `/etc/opt/resmon/log/registrar.log`.

The Continentalclusters EMS client, by default, logs messages to the `/etc/opt/resmon/log/client.log` file.

## Troubleshooting Continentalclusters Error Messages

This section contains a list of error messages that users might encounter while using Continentalclusters Version A.08.00. It also provides the probable cause for these errors and recommended solutions.

**Table 2 Troubleshooting Continentalclusters Error Messages**

| Command/Component | Symptoms                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ccmonpkg          | The <i>ccmonpkg</i> package fails to start. The following error message is written to the <code>/var/opt/resmon/log/client.log</code> file:<br>Process ID: 26962<br>( <code>/usr/sbin/cmclsenryd</code> ) Log Level: "Error<br>rm_client_connect: Cannot get IP address for localhost."                                                                 | The system is unable to resolve the IP address of the localhost. As a result, the EMS initialization fails.                                                                                                                                  | Ensure that the host name, localhost, resolves to the loopback address. Check whether the <code>/etc/hosts</code> file has entries for the name localhost.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| cmcheckconcl      | The <code>cmcheckconcl</code> command fails with the following error message: "Not all the nodes are specified in cluster."                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | The cause must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) cannot be resolved amongst the nodes in the Continentalclusters.</li> <li>The SSH trust is not established.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ensure all nodes of the primary and recovery cluster are specified under the CLUSTER CONFIGURATION Section in the Continentalclusters configuration file.</li> <li>Ensure that the FQDNs are resolvable amongst the nodes in the Continentalclusters.</li> <li>Ensure that the SSH trust is set up properly.</li> </ul> |
| csshsetup         | Following error messages are encountered while using the <code>csshsetup</code> command:<br>"grep: can't open<br>/.ssh/authorized_keys2<br>/opt/dsau/bin/csshsetup[29]:<br>/.ssh/authorized_keys2:<br>Cannot create the specified file."                                                                                                                | The HOME variable is not set.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Set the HOME variable to the <code>conclusr</code> 's home directory:<br><code>\$HOME=/home/conclusr</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| csshsetup         | The following command output is displayed:<br>"Generating public/private rsa key pair. Please be patient... Key generation might take a few minutes<br>open /.ssh/id_rsa failed: Permission denied. Saving the key failed:<br>/.ssh/id_rsa. Error: Unable to generate key pair on local host<br>Error: Unable to setup local system<br><machine_name>". | The HOME variable is not set.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Set the HOME variable to the <code>conclusr</code> 's home directory:<br><code>\$HOME=/home/conclusr</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| cmcheckconcl      | The following error message is encountered while using the <code>cmcheckconcl</code> command: Error: "Global package switching flag is set                                                                                                                                                                                                              | The cause must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <code>AUTO_RUN</code> flag in the package</li> </ul>                                                                                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the <code>AUTO_RUN</code> flag in the package configuration file to NO.</li> <li>Ensure that the <code>autorun</code> attribute is set to NO for</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                         |



**Table 2 Troubleshooting Continentalclusters Error Messages** (continued)

| Command/Component              | Symptoms                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Cause                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Resolution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                | to true for package <code>&lt;PackageName&gt;</code> on cluster <code>&lt;ClusterName&gt;</code> ".                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | configuration file is set to YES.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The global switching for the package is enabled using the <code>cmmodpkg -e &lt;package_name&gt;</code> command. The value is set to YES.</li> </ul> | recovery or rehearsal packages. Disable the flag using the <code>cmmodpkg -d</code> command.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>cmclsentryd</code>       | The <code>cmclsentryd</code> daemon fails to start. The following error message is logged in the <code>/var/adm/cmconcl/logs/cmclsentryd.log</code> or <code>/var/adm/cmcluster/log/ccmonpkg.log</code> file: "State dir is not mounted".                                                                                                                                            | Volume Group (VG) is not configured for the <code>ccmonpkg</code> package.                                                                                                                                                       | Ensure that the Volume Group information for maintenance mode is configured properly for the <code>ccmonpkg</code> package. Verify that the correct directory path is specified for the state directory attribute <code>CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_STATE_DIR</code> configuration file. |
| <code>cmrunpkg/cmmodpkg</code> | The <code>cmrunpkg</code> command fails with the following error message:<br><pre>Error: Cannot start package &lt;package_name&gt;:Disallowed by the ContinentalClusters product</pre> or<br>The <code>cmmodpkg</code> command fails with the following error message:<br><pre>Error: Cannot enable package &lt;package_name&gt;:Disallowed by the ContinentalClusters product</pre> | The Continentalclusters split brain prevention module ( <code>vpacrlb</code> ) is not allowing the package to start.                                                                                                             | Check the reason for the error in the log file <code>/var/adm/cmconcl/logs/checkpkg.log</code> and fix accordingly.                                                                                                                                                              |

---

# A Migrating to Continentalclusters A.08.00

Continentalclusters version A.08.00 includes enhanced features and capabilities, such as support for modular packages, IPv6 support, and a secure communication protocol for inter-cluster operations. HP recommends that you migrate Continentalclusters to the latest version to obtain the benefits of these features.

---

**NOTE:** Upgrading to Continentalclusters A.08.00 requires re-applying the Continentalclusters configuration.

---

- ⓘ **IMPORTANT:** Continentalclusters A.06.00 or higher can only be upgraded to Continentalclusters A.08.00. For configurations versions earlier than A.06.00 must upgrade to version A.06.00 before migrating to Continentalclusters A.08.00.
- 

To migrate to Continentalclusters A.08.00:

1. Set up the secure communication environment.  
For more information on setting up the SSH environment for Continentalclusters, see [“Sample Continentalclusters Configuration”](#) (page 11).
2. Halt the monitor package.  

```
# cmhaltpkg cmonpkg
```
3. Install Continentalclusters A.08.00 using the `swinstall` command on all the nodes of the cluster.
4. Verify the Continentalclusters configuration ASCII file that was used to create this Continentalclusters configuration.  

```
# cmcheckconcl -v -C cmconcl.config
```
5. Apply the same Continentalclusters configuration file used in step 4.  

```
# cmapplyconcl -v -C cmconcl.config
```
6. Start the monitor package.  

```
# cmrunpkg cmonpkg
```
7. Verify the configuration and the status of the cluster.  

```
# cmviewconcl
```

# B Continentalclusters Worksheets

Planning is an essential effort in creating a robust Continentalclusters environment. HP recommends to record the details of your configuration on planning worksheets. These worksheets can be filled in partially before configuration begins, and then completed as you build the Continentalclusters. All the participating Serviceguard clusters in one Continentalclusters must have a copy of these worksheets to help coordinate initial configuration and subsequent changes. Complete the worksheets in the following sections for every recovery pair of clusters that are monitored by the Continentalclusters monitor.

## Data Center Worksheet

The following worksheet helps you describe your specific data center configuration. Fill out the worksheet and keep it for future reference.

```
=====
Continentalclusters Name: _____
Continentalclusters State Dir: _____
=====
Primary Data Center Information: _____
  Primary Cluster Name: _____
  Data Center Name and Location: _____
  Main Contact: _____
  Phone Number: _____
  Beeper: _____
  Email Address: _____
  Node Names: _____
  Monitor Package Name: __ccmonpkg_____
  Monitor Interval: _____
Continentalclusters State Shared Disk: _____
=====
Recovery Data Center Information:
  Recovery Cluster Name: _____
  Data Center Name and Location: _____
  Main Contact: _____
  Phone Number: _____
  Beeper: _____
  Email Address: _____
  Node Names: _____
  Monitor Package Name: __ccmonpkg_____
  Monitor Interval: _____
Continentalclusters State Shared Disk: _____
```

## Recovery Group Worksheet

The following worksheet helps you to organize and record your specific recovery groups. Fill out the worksheet and keep it for future reference.

```
=====
Continentalclusters Name: _____
=====
Recovery Group Data: _____
  Recovery Group Name: _____
  Primary Cluster/Package Name: _____
  Data Sender Cluster/Package Name: _____
  Recovery Cluster/Package Name: _____
  Rehearsal Cluster/Package Name: _____
  Data Receiver Cluster/Package Name: _____
Recovery Group Data: _____
  Recovery Group Name: _____
  Primary Cluster/Package Name: _____
  Data Sender Cluster/Package Name: _____
  Recovery Cluster/Package Name: _____
```

Rehearsal Cluster/Package Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Data Receiver Cluster/Package Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Recovery Group Data:  
 Recovery Group Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Primary Cluster/Package Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Data Sender Cluster/Package Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Recovery Cluster/Package Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Rehearsal Cluster/Package Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Data Receiver Cluster/Package Name: \_\_\_\_\_

## Cluster Event Worksheet

The following worksheet helps you to organize and record the cluster events you want to track. Fill out a worksheet for each primary or recovery cluster that you want to monitor. You must monitor each cluster containing a primary package which needs to be recovered.

Continentalclusters Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
 =====  
 Cluster Event Information:  
 Cluster Name \_\_\_\_\_  
 Monitoring Cluster: \_\_\_\_\_  
 UNREACHABLE:  
 Alert Interval: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Alarm Interval: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notification: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notification: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notification: \_\_\_\_\_  
 DOWN:  
 Alert Interval: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notification: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notification: \_\_\_\_\_  
 UP:  
 Alert Interval: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notification: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notification: \_\_\_\_\_  
 ERROR:  
 Alert Interval: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notification: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Notification: \_\_\_\_\_

## Recovery Checklist

The following recovery checklist helps the administrators and operators at both sites of a Continentalclusters to define the recovery procedures.

- Identify the level of alert that the monitoring site received.
  - Cluster Alert
  - Cluster Alarm
- Contact the monitored site by **phone** to rule out the following:
  - WAN network failure, primary cluster and packages are still fine.
  - Cluster and/or package have come back up but UP notification not yet received by recovery site.
- Get authorization from the monitored site using one of the following:
  - Authorized person contacted:
    - Director 1
    - Admin 1
  - Authorization received:
    - Human-to-human voice authorization
    - Voice mail

- Notify the monitored site of successful recovery using one of the following:
  - Authorized person contacted:
    - Director 1
    - Admin 1
  - Confirmation received
  - Human-to-human voice authorization
  - Voice mail

## Site Aware Disaster Tolerant architecture configuration worksheet

This appendix includes the worksheets that you must use while configuring Site Aware Disaster Tolerant Architecture in your environment.

### Continentalclusters Site configuration

**Table 3 Site configuration**

| Item                                                                                         | Cluster |  | Cluster |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--|---------|--|
| Site Physical Location<br>Name of the location                                               |         |  |         |  |
| Site Name<br>One word name for the site that is used in configurations                       |         |  |         |  |
| Node Names<br>Name of the nodes to be used for configurations                                | 1)      |  |         |  |
| 1st Heart Beat Subnet IP<br>IP address of the node on the 1st Serviceguard Heart Beat Subnet |         |  |         |  |
| 2nd Heart Beat Subnet IP<br>IP address of the node on the 2nd Serviceguard Heart Beat Subnet |         |  |         |  |

### Replication configuration

**Table 4 Replication configuration**

| Item                                                                                         | Data |  |  |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|--|--|--|
| Replication RAID Device Group Name<br>Name of the Continuous Access device group (dev_group) |      |  |  |  |
| Sites                                                                                        |      |  |  |  |

**Table 4 Replication configuration (continued)**

| Item                                                              | Data                                            |  |                                                 |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------------------|--|
| Name of the sites                                                 |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| Disk Array Serial #<br>Serial Number of Disk Arrays at every site |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| Node Names<br>Name of Nodes at every site                         |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| Command Device on Nodes<br>Raw device file path at every node     |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| Device group device name<br>Dev_name parameter                    | Cluster 1 LUN<br>Specify luns in CU:LDEV format |  | Cluster 2 LUN<br>Specify luns in CU:LDEV format |  |
| 1)                                                                |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| 2)                                                                |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| 3)                                                                |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| 4)                                                                |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| 5)                                                                |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| 6)                                                                |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| 7)                                                                |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| 8)                                                                |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| 9)                                                                |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |
| 10)                                                               |                                                 |  |                                                 |  |

## CRS Sub-cluster configuration – using CFS

**Table 5 Configuring a CRS sub-cluster using CFS**

| Item                                                                                       | Cluster |  | Cluster |  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--|---------|--|
| CRS Sub Cluster Name<br>Name of the CRS cluster                                            |         |  |         |  |
| CRS Home<br>Local FS Path for CRS HOME                                                     |         |  |         |  |
| CRS Shared Disk Group name<br>CVM disk group name for CRS shared disk                      |         |  |         |  |
| CRS cluster file system mount point<br>Mount point path where the vote and OCR are created |         |  |         |  |
| CRS Vote Disk                                                                              |         |  |         |  |

**Table 5 Configuring a CRS sub-cluster using CFS (continued)**

| Item                                                         | Cluster |  | Cluster |  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--|---------|--|
| Path to the vote disk or file                                |         |  |         |  |
| CRS OCR Disk<br>Path to the OCR disk or file                 |         |  |         |  |
| CRS DG MNP package<br>Path to the OCR disk or file           |         |  |         |  |
| CRS MP MNP package<br>Path to the OCR disk or file           |         |  |         |  |
| CRS MNP package<br>Path to the OCR disk or file              |         |  |         |  |
| CRS Member Nodes<br>Node Names                               |         |  |         |  |
| Private IP<br>IP addresses for RAC<br>Interconnect           |         |  |         |  |
| Private IP names<br>IP address names for RAC<br>Interconnect |         |  |         |  |
| Virtual IP<br>IP addresses for RAC VIP                       |         |  |         |  |
| Virtual IP names<br>IP addresses names for RAC<br>VIP        |         |  |         |  |

## RAC database configuration

**Table 6 RAC database configuration**

| Property                                                                                        | Value |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Database Name<br>Name of the database                                                           |       |
| Database Instance Names<br>Instance names for the database                                      |       |
| RAC data files file system mount point<br>Mount Point for oracle RAC data files                 |       |
| RAC data files CVM Disk group name<br>CVM Disk Group name for oracle RAC data files file system |       |
| RAC flash files file system mount point.<br>Mount Point for oracle RAC flash                    |       |

**Table 6 RAC database configuration (continued)**

| Property                                                                                    | Value   |  |         |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--|---------|--|
| RAC flash files CVM Disk group name<br>CVM Disk Group name for oracle RAC flash file system |         |  |         |  |
| Entry                                                                                       | Cluster |  | Cluster |  |
| RAC Home<br>Local file system directory to install Oracle RAC                               |         |  |         |  |
| RAC MNP<br>Package name for RAC database                                                    |         |  |         |  |
| RAC Data file DG MNP<br>CFS DG MNP package name for RAC data files file system              |         |  |         |  |
| RAC Data file MP MNP<br>CFS MP MNP package name for RAC data files file system              |         |  |         |  |
| RAC Flash Area DG MNP<br>CFS DG MNP package name for RAC flash file system                  |         |  |         |  |
| RAC Flash Area MP MNP<br>CFS MP MNP package name for RAC flash file system                  |         |  |         |  |
| Node Names                                                                                  |         |  |         |  |
| Database Instance Names                                                                     |         |  |         |  |

## Site Controller package configuration

**Table 7 Site Controller package configuration**

|                                                                                                            |                                                                               |                                                                             |  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| PACKAGE_NAME<br>Name of the Site Controller Package                                                        |                                                                               |                                                                             |  |
| Site Safety Latch<br>Name of the EMS resource name. The format is /dts/mcsc/<site controller package name> | /dts/mcsc/                                                                    |                                                                             |  |
| Site<br>value for the site attribute                                                                       | critical_package<br>values for the critical_package attribute in this cluster | managed_package<br>values for the managed_package attribute in this cluster |  |
|                                                                                                            | 1)                                                                            | 1)                                                                          |  |
|                                                                                                            | 2)                                                                            | 2)                                                                          |  |
|                                                                                                            | 3)                                                                            | 3)                                                                          |  |
|                                                                                                            | 4)                                                                            | 4)                                                                          |  |



**Table 7 Site Controller package configuration** *(continued)*

|  |    |    |
|--|----|----|
|  | 1) | 1) |
|  | 2) | 2) |
|  | 3) | 3) |
|  | 4) | 4) |

## C Configuration file parameters for Continentalclusters

This appendix lists all Continentalclusters configuration file variables.

|                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CLUSTER_ALARM [Minutes]<br>MINUTES [Seconds] SECONDS  | This is a time interval, in minutes and/or seconds, after which the notifications defined in the associated NOTIFICATION parameters are sent and failover to the Recovery Cluster using the <code>cmrecovercl</code> command is enabled. This number must be a positive integer. Minimum is 30 seconds, maximum is 3600 seconds or 60 minutes (one hour).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| CLUSTER_ALERT [Minutes]<br>MINUTES [Seconds] SECONDS  | This is a time interval, in minutes and/or seconds, after which the notifications defined in the associated NOTIFICATION parameters are sent. Failover to the Recovery Cluster using the <code>cmrecovercl</code> command is not enabled at this time. This number must be a positive integer. Minimum is 30 seconds, maximum is 3600 seconds or 60 minutes (one hour).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| CLUSTER_DOMAIN <i>domainname</i>                      | This is the domain of the nodes in the previously specified cluster. This domain is appended to the <code>NODE_NAME</code> to provide a full system address across the WAN.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| CLUSTER_EVENT <i>Clustername/Status</i>               | This is a cluster name associated with one of the following changes of status: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• up - the cluster is up and running.</li><li>• unreachable - the cluster is unreachable.</li><li>• down - the cluster is down, but nodes are responding.</li><li>• error - an error is detected.</li></ul> The maximum length is 47 characters.<br>When the <code>MONITORING_CLUSTER</code> detects a change in status, one or more notifications are sent, as defined by the <code>NOTIFICATION</code> parameter, at time intervals defined by the <code>CLUSTER_ALERT</code> and <code>CLUSTER_ALARM</code> parameters. |
| CLUSTER_NAME <i>clustername</i>                       | The name of a member cluster within the Continentalclusters. It must be the same name that is defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration ASCII file. Maximum size is 31 bytes.<br>All the nodes in the cluster must be listed after this variable using the <code>NODE_NAME</code> variable.<br>A <code>MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME</code> and <code>MONITOR_INTERVAL</code> must also be associated with every <code>CLUSTER_NAME</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_NAME <i>name</i>                  | The name of Continentalclusters managed by the Continentalclusters product. Maximum size is 31 bytes. This name cannot be changed after the configuration is applied. You must first delete the existing configuration if you want to choose a different name.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE <i>clustername/package name</i> | This variable is only used if the data replication is carried out by a separate software application that must be kept highly available. If the replication software uses a receiver process, you include this variable in the configuration file. Maximum size is 80 characters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

The parameter consists of a pair of names: the name of the cluster that receives the data to be replicated (usually the Recovery Cluster) as defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration ASCII file, followed by a slash ("/"), followed by the name of the data replication receiver package as defined in the Serviceguard package configuration ASCII file. Some replication software might only have a receiver package as separate package because the sender package is built into the application.

DATA\_SENDER\_PACKAGE

*clustername/package*

This variable is only used if the data replication is carried out by a separate software application that must be kept highly available. If the replication software uses a sender process, you include this variable in the configuration file. Maximum size is 80 characters.

The parameter consists of a pair of names: the name of the cluster that sends the data to be replicated (usually the Primary Cluster) as defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration ASCII file, followed by a slash ("/"), followed by the name of the data replication sender package as defined in the Serviceguard package configuration ASCII file. Some replication software might only have a receiver package as separate package because the sender package is built into the application.

MONITOR\_INTERVAL

*n*

The interval, in seconds, that the Continentalclusters monitor polls the cluster, nodes, and packages to see if the status has changed. This number must be an integer. The minimum value is 30 seconds, the default is 60 seconds, and the maximum is 300 seconds (5 minutes).

MONITOR\_PACKAGE\_NAME  
*packagename*

This is the name of the Serviceguard package containing the Continentalclusters monitor. Maximum size is 31 bytes.

MONITORING\_CLUSTER

*Name*

This is name of the cluster that polls the cluster named in the CLUSTER\_EVENT and sends notification. Maximum length is 31 bytes.

NODE\_NAME *nodename*

This is the unqualified node name as defined in the DNS name server configuration. Maximum size is 31 bytes.

NOTIFICATION *Destination*  
*"Message"*

This is a destination and message associated with a specific CLUSTER\_ALERT or CLUSTER\_ALARM. The maximum size of the message string is 170 characters including the quotation marks. The message string must be entered on a separate single line in the configuration file.

The following destinations are acceptable:

- CONSOLE - write the specified message to the console.
- EMAIL *Address* - send the specified message to an email address. You can use an email address provided by a paging service to set up automatic paging. Consult your pager service provider for details.
- OPC *Level* - send the specified message to OpenView IT/Operations. The *Level* can be 8 (normal), 16 (warning), 64 (minor), 128 (major), or 32 (critical).
- SNMP *Level* - send the specified message as an SNMP trap. The *Level* can be 1 (normal), 2 (warning), 3 (minor), 4 (major), or 5 (critical).
- SYSLOG - Append a notice of the specified message to the `/var/adm/syslog/syslog.log` file. Note

that the text of the message is not placed in the syslog file, only a notice from the monitor.

- TCP *Nodename:Portnumber* - send the specified message to a TCP port on the specified node.
- TEXTLOG *Pathname* - append the specified message to a specified text log file.
- UDP *Nodename:Portnumber* - send the specified message to a UDP port on the specified node.

Any number of notifications can be associated with a given alert or alarm.

PRIMARY\_PACKAGE *Clustername/Package name*

This is a pair of names: the name of a cluster as defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration ASCII file, followed by a slash ("/"), followed by the name of the primary package as defined in the Serviceguard package configuration ASCII file. Maximum size is 80 characters.

RECOVERY\_GROUP\_NAME *name*

This is a name for the set of related primary packages on one cluster and the recovery packages on another cluster that protect the primary packages. The maximum size is 31 bytes.

You create a recovery group for every package that must be started on the recovery cluster in case of a failure in the primary cluster. A PRIMARY\_PACKAGE and RECOVERY\_PACKAGE must be associated with every RECOVERY\_GROUP\_NAME.

RECOVERY\_PACKAGE *Clustername/Package name*

This is a pair of names: the name of the recovery cluster as defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration ASCII file, followed by a slash ("/"), followed by the name of the recovery package as defined in the Serviceguard package configuration ASCII file. Maximum size is 80 characters.

CONTINENTAL\_CLUSTER\_STATE\_DIR *<directory location>*

Absolute path to a file system where the Continentalclusters state data stored. The state data file system must be created on a shared disk in the cluster and specified as part of the monitor package configuration. The path specified here must be created in all the nodes in the Continentalclusters. The monitor package control script must mount the file system at this specified path on the node it is started. This parameter is optional if the maintenance mode feature for recovery groups is not required. This parameter is mandatory if maintenance mode feature for recovery groups is required.

REHEARSAL\_PACKAGE *ClusterName/PackageName*

This is a pair of names: the name of a cluster as defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration ASCII file, followed by a slash ("/"), followed by the name of the rehearsal package as defined in the Serviceguard package configuration ASCII file. This variable is only used for rehearsal operations. This package is started on the recovery cluster by the `cmrecovercl-r` command.

## D Continentalclusters Command and Daemon Reference

This appendix lists all commands and daemons used with Continentalclusters. Manual pages are also available.

`cmapplyconcl [-v] [-C]  
filename`

This command verifies the Continentalclusters configuration as specified in *filename*, creates or updates the binary, and distributes it to all the nodes in the Continentalclusters. It is not necessary to halt the Serviceguard cluster in order to run this command; however, the Continentalclusters monitor package must be halted. If `cmapplyconcl` is specified when the continentalclusters has already been configured, the configuration updated with the configuration changes. Before updating Continentalclusters, all impacted recovery groups must be moved out of maintenance mode (i.e. enabled). The `cmapplyconcl` command must be run when a configuration change is made to the Serviceguard cluster that impacts the Continentalclusters configuration. For Example, if a node is added to the Serviceguard cluster, the Continentalclusters ASCII file must be edited to include the new `NODE_NAME`. All the nodes within the Serviceguard cluster must be running prior to the `cmapplyconcl` command being run.

Options are:

`-v` Verbose mode displays all messages.  
`-C filename` The name of the ASCII configuration file. This is a required parameter.

`cmcheckconcl [-v] -C  
filename`

This command verifies the Continentalclusters configuration specified in *filename*. It is not necessary to halt the Serviceguard cluster in order to run this command; however, the Continentalclusters monitor package must be halted. This command will parse the `ASCII_file` to ensure proper syntax, verify parameter lengths, and validate object names such as the `CLUSTER_NAME` and `NODE_NAME`.

Options are:

`-C filename` The name of the ASCII configuration file. This is a required parameter.

`cmclapplyd`

A special daemon in Continentalclusters version A.08.00, used by the `cmapplyconcl` command, to apply the Continentalclusters configuration package. This daemon must be configured to run as `root` on all the nodes in Continentalclusters.

`cmclrmond`

This is the Continentalclusters monitor daemon that provides notification of remote cluster status through the Event Monitoring Service (EMS). This monitor runs on both the primary and recovery clusters. The `cmclsenentryd` daemon notifies `cmclrmond` of any change in cluster status. Log messages are written to the EMS log file `/etc/resmon/log/api.log` on the node where the monitor was running when it detected a status event.

`cmclsenentryd`

This daemon, which is run from the monitor package (`ccmonpkg`) starts up the Continentalclusters monitor `cmclrmond`. Messages are logged to log file `/var/adm/cmconcl/logs/cmclsenentryd.log`.

|                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cmdeleteconcl [-f]</code>                                      | <p>This command is used to delete the Continentalclusters configuration from the entire Continentalclusters. This command will not remove the file system configured for recovery group maintenance mode feature.</p> <p>Options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-f Delete the configuration files on all reachable nodes without further prompting. If this option is not used and if some nodes are unreachable, you prompted to indicate whether to proceed with deleting the configuration on the reachable nodes. If this option is used and some node has configuration files for Continentalclusters with a different name, you prompted to indicate whether to proceed with deleting the configuration on that node.</li> </ul>                                           |
| <code>cmforceconcl</code><br><i>ServiceguardPackageEnableCommand</i> | <p>This command is used to force a Continentalclusters package to start. It allows a package to run even if the status of a remote package in the recovery group is unknown, which indicates that the software will not determine the status of the remote package.</p> <p><i>ServiceguardPackageEnableCommand</i> is either a <code>cmrunpkg</code> or <code>cmmodpkg</code> command.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>cmomd</code>                                                   | <p>This daemon is the Object Manager, which communicates with Serviceguard to provide information about cluster objects to the Continentalclusters monitor. Messages are logged to log file <code>/var/opt/cmom/cmomd.log</code>, which can be read using the <code>cmreadlog</code> command.</p> <p>This daemon is not required starting from Continentalclusters version A.08.00.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>cmqueryconcl filename</code>                                   | <p>This command <code>cmqueryconcl</code> creates a template ASCII Continentalclusters configuration file. The ASCII file must be customized for a specific Continentalclusters environment. After customization, this file must be verified by the <code>cmcheckconcl</code> command and distributed by using the <code>cmapplyconcl</code> command. If an ASCII file is not provided, output directed to <code>stdout</code>. This command must be run as the first step in preparing for Continentalclusters configuration.</p> <p>Options are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-v Verbose mode displays all messages.</li> <li>-C <i>filename</i> Declares an alternate location for the configuration file. The default is <code>/etc/cmcluster/cmconcl.config</code>.</li> </ul> |
| <code>cmrecovercl [-f]</code>                                        | <p>This command performs the recovery actions necessary to start the recovery groups on current cluster. Care must be taken before issuing this command. It is important to contact the primary cluster site to determine if recovery is necessary prior to running this command.</p> <p>This command will perform recovery actions only for recovery groups that are out of the maintenance mode (i.e. enabled). If the specified recovery group for <code>-g</code> option is in maintenance mode; the command will exit without recovering it. When <code>-c</code> option is used; the command will skip recovering recovery groups which are in the maintenance mode.</p>                                                                                                                    |

This command can be issued from any node on the recovery cluster. This command first connects to the Continentalclusters monitoring package running on the recovery cluster. This might be a different cluster node than where the `cmrecovercl` command is being run. `cmrecovercl` connects to the monitoring package to verify that the primary cluster is in an Unreachable or Down state. If the primary cluster is reachable and the cluster is Up, this command will fail. Next, the data receiver packages on the recovery cluster (if any) are halted sequentially. Finally, the recovery packages are started on the recovery cluster. The recovery packages are started by enabling package switching globally (`cmmodpkg -e`) for every package. This will cause the package to be started on the first available node within the recovery cluster. The `cmrecovercl` command can only be run on a recovery cluster. The `cmrecovercl` command will fail if there has not been sufficient time since the primary cluster became unreachable. This command is only enabled after the time as configured via `CLUSTER_ALARM` parameters has been reached. Once a cluster alarm has been triggered, this command enabled and can be run. The `-f` option can be used to enable the command after the time as configured via `CLUSTER_ALERT` parameters has been reached.

Options are:

- `-f` The force option enables `cmrecovercl` to function even though a `CLUSTER_ALARM` has not been received.

```
cmrecovercl {-e | -d [f]}-g <recovery group name>
```

This command moves a recovery group in and out of the maintenance mode by disabling or enabling it. This command must be run only on the recovery cluster.

Options are:

- `-e` Moves a recovery group out of the maintenance mode by enabling it.
- `-d [-f]` Moves a recovery group into the maintenance mode by disabling it. Use the `-f` option to forcefully move a recovery group into the maintenance mode when the primary cluster status is unknown or unreachable.

```
cmrecovercl [-r]-g <recovery group name>
```

This command starts the rehearsal for the specified recovery group. This command must be run only on the recovery cluster. This command will fail if the specified recovery group is not in the maintenance mode.

```
cmviewconcl [-v]
```

This command allows you to view the status and much of the configuration of Continentalclusters. This command must be run as the last step when creating a Continentalclusters configuration to confirm the cluster status, or any time you like to know cluster status.

Options are:

- `-v` Verbose mode displays all messages.

---

## E Package attributes

### Package Attributes for Continentalcluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP

This appendix lists all Package Attributes for Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP. HP recommends that you use the default settings for most of these variables, so exercise caution when modifying them:

AUTO\_FENCEDATA\_SPLIT

(Default = 1)

This parameter applies only when the fence level is set to DATA, which will cause the application to fail if the Continuous Access link fails or if the remote site fails.

Values:

0 – Do NOT startup the package at the primary site. Require user intervention to either fix the hardware problem or to force the package to start on this node by creating the FORCEFLAG file. Use this value to ensure that the SVOL data is always current with the trade-off of long application downtime while the Continuous Access link and/or the remote site are being repaired.

1 – (DEFAULT) Startup the package at the primary site. Request the local disk array to automatically split itself from the remote array. This will ensure that the application able to startup at the primary site without having to fix the hardware problems immediately. Note that the new data written on the PVOL will not be remotely protected and the data on SVOL non-current. When the Continuous Access link and/or the remote site is repaired, you must manually use the command "pairresync" to re-join the PVOL and SVOL. Until that command successfully completes, the PVOL will NOT be remotely protected and the SVOL data will not be current. Use this value to minimize the down time of the application with the trade-off of having to manually resynchronize the pairs while the application is running at the primary site.

If the package has been configured for a three data center environment, this parameter is applicable only when the package is attempting to start up in either the primary (DC1) or secondary (DC2) data center. This parameter is not relevant in the recovery cluster or the third data center. Use this parameter's default value in the third data center.

AUTO\_NONCURDATA

(Default = 0)

This parameter applies when the package is starting up with possible non-current data under certain Continuous Access pair states. During failover, this parameter will apply when the SVOL is in the PAIR or PFUL state and the PVOL side is in the PSUE, EX\_ENORMT, EX\_CMDIOE or PAIR (for Continuous Access Journal) state. During failback, this parameter will apply when the PVOL is in the PSUS state and the SVOL is in the EX\_ENORMT or EX\_CMDIOE state. When starting the package in any of the above states, you run the risk of losing data.

Values:



0 – (DEFAULT) Do NOT startup the application on non-current data. If Metrocluster/Continuous Access cannot determine the data is current, it will not allow the package to start up. (Note: for fence level DATA and NEVER, the data is current when both PVOL and SVOL are in PAIR state.)

1 – Startup the application even when the data cannot be current.

---

**NOTE:** When a device group state is SVOL\_PAIR on the local site and EX\_ENORMT (Raid Manager or node failure) or EX\_CMDIOE (disk I/O failure) on the remote site (this means it is impossible for Metrocluster/Continuous Access to determine if the data on the SVOL site is current), Metrocluster/Continuous Access conservatively assumes that the data on the SVOL site can be non-current and uses the value of AUTO\_NONCURDATA to determine whether the package is allowed to automatically start up. If the value is 1, Metrocluster/Continuous Access allows the package to startup; otherwise, the package will not be started.

**NOTE:** In a three data center environment, if the package is trying to start up in data center three (DC3), within the recovery cluster, only AUTO\_NONCURDATA can be checked. All other AUTO parameters are not relevant when a package tries to start up on DC3.

---

Use the two scenarios below to help you determine the correct environment settings for AUTO\_NONCURDATA and AUTO\_FENCEDATA\_SPLIT for your Metrocluster/Continuous Access packages.

Scenario 1: With the package device group fence level DATA, if setting AUTO\_FENCEDATA\_SPLIT=0, it is guaranteed that the remote data site will never contain non-current data (this assumes that the FORCEFLAG has not been used to allow the package to start up if the Continuous Access links or SVOL site are down). In this environment, you can set AUTO\_NONCURDATA=1 to make the package automatically startup on the SVOL site when the PVOL site fails, and it is guaranteed the package data is current. (If setting AUTO\_NONCURDATA=0, the package will not automatically startup on the SVOL site.)

Scenario 2: When the package device group fence level is set to NEVER or ASYNC, you are not guaranteed that the remote (SVOL) data site still contains current data (The application can continue to write data to the device group on the PVOL site if the Continuous Access links or SVOL site are down, and it is impossible for Metrocluster/Continuous Access to determine whether the data on the SVOL site is current.) In this environment, it is required to set AUTO\_NONCURDATA=0 if the intention is to ensure the package application is running on current data. (If setting AUTO\_NONCURDATA=1, the package started up on SVOL site whether the data is current or not.)

AUTO\_PSUEPSUS

(Default = 0)

In asynchronous mode, when the primary site fails, either due to Continuous Access link failure, or some other hardware failure, and we fail over to the secondary site, the PVOL will become PSUE and the SVOL will become

PSUS(SSWS). During this transition, `horctakeover` will attempt to flush any data in the side file on the MCU to the RCU. Data that does not make it to the RCU stored on the bit map of the MCU. When failing back to the primary site any data that was in the MCU side file that is now stored on the bit map lost during resynchronization.

In synchronous mode with fence level NEVER, when the Continuous Access link fails, the application continues running and writing data to the PVOL. At this point the SVOL contains non-current data. If there is another failure that causes the package to fail over and start on the secondary site, the PVOL will become PSUE and the SVOL will become PSUS(SSWS). When failing back to the primary site, any differential data that was on the PVOL prior to failover lost during resynchronization.

---

**NOTE:** This variable is also used for the combination of PVOL\_PFUS and SVOL\_PSUS. When either the side file or journal volumes have reached threshold timeout, the PVOL will become PFUS. If there is a Continuous Access link, or some other hardware failure, and we fail over the secondary site, the SVOL will become PSUS(SSWS) but the PVOL will remain PFUS. Once the hardware failure has been fixed, any data that is on the MCU bit map lost during resynchronization. This variable will allow package startup if changed from default value of 0 to 1.

---

If the package has been configured for a three data center (3DC) environment, this parameter is applicable only when the package is attempting to start up in either the primary (DC1) or secondary (DC2) data center. This parameter is not relevant in (the third data center) in the recovery cluster. Use this parameter's default value in the third data center.

Values:

0 – (DEFAULT) Do NOT failback to the PVOL side after an outage to the PVOL side has been fixed. This will protect any data that might have been in the MCU side file or differential data in the PVOL when the outage occurred.  
1–Allow the package to startup on the PVOL side. We failed over to the secondary (SVOL) side due to an error state on the primary (PVOL) side. Now we're ready to failback to the primary side. The delta data between the MCU and RCU resynchronized. This resynchronization will over write any data that was in the MCU prior to the primary (PVOL) side failure.

(Default = 0)

This parameter applies when the PVOL is in the suspended state PSUS, and SVOL is in the failover state PSUS(SSWS). When the PVOL and SVOL are in these states, it is hard to tell which side has the good latest data. When starting the package in this state on the PVOL side, you run the risk of losing any changed data in the PVOL.

Values:

0 – (Default) Do NOT startup the package at the primary site. Require user intervention to choose which side has the good data and resynchronizing the PVOL and SVOL or force the package to start by creating the FORCEFLAG file.

AUTO\_PSUSSSWS

1 — Startup the package after resynchronize the data from the SVOL side to the PVOL side. The risk of using this option is that the SVOL data might not be a preferable one.

If the package has been configured for a three data center (3DC) environment, this parameter is applicable only when the package is attempting to start up in either the primary (DC1) or secondary (DC2) data center. This parameter is not relevant in (the third data center) in the recovery cluster. Use this parameter's default value in the third data center.

AUTO\_SVOLPFUS

(Default = 0)

This parameter applies when the PVOL and SVOL both have the state of suspended (PFUS) due to the side file reaching threshold while in Asynchronous mode only. When the PVOL and SVOL are in this state, the Continuous Access link is suspended, the data on the PVOL is not remotely protected, and the data on the SVOL will not be current. When starting the package in this state, you run the risk of losing any data that has been written to the PVOL side.

Values:

0 – (Default) Do NOT startup the package at the secondary site and allowing restart on another node. Require user intervention to either fix the problem by resynchronizing the PVOL and SVOL or force the package to start on this node by creating the FORCEFLAG.

1 – Startup the package after making the SVOL writable. The risk of using this option is that the SVOL data might actually be non-current and the data written to the PVOL side after the hardware failure might be loss.

This parameter is not required to be set if a package is configured for three data centers environment because three data center does not support Asynchronous mode of data replication. Leave this parameter with its default value in all data centers.

AUTO\_SVOLPSUE

(Default = 0)

This parameter applies when the PVOL and SVOL both have the state of PSUE. This state combination will occur when there is an Continuous Access link, or other hardware failure, or when the SVOL side is in a PSUE state while we can not communicate with the PVOL side. This will only apply while in the Asynchronous mode.

The SVOL side will become PSUE after the Continuous Access link timeout value has been exceeded at which time the PVOL side will try and flush any outstanding data to the SVOL side. If this flush is unsuccessful, then the data on the SVOL side will not be current.

Values:

0 – (Default) Do NOT startup the package at the secondary site and allow package to try another node. Require user intervention to either fix the problem by resynchronizing the PVOL and SVOL or force the package to start on this node by creating the FORCEFLAG file.

1 – Startup the package on the SVOL side. The risk of using this option is that the SVOL data might actually be

non-current and the data written to the PVOL side after the hardware failure might be loss.

This parameter is not required to be set if a package is configured for three data centers environment because three data center does not support Asynchronous mode of data replication. Leave this parameter with its default value in all data centers.

AUTO\_SVOLPSUS

(Default = 0)

This parameter applies when the PVOL and SVOL both have the state of suspended (PSUS). The problem with this situation cannot determine the earlier state: COPY or PAIR. If the earlier state was PAIR, it is completely safe to startup the package at the remote site. If the earlier state was COPY, the data at the SVOL site is likely to be inconsistent

Values:

0—(Default) Do NOT startup the package at the secondary site. Require user intervention to either fix the problem by resynchronizing the PVOL and SVOL or force the package to start on this node by creating the FORCEFLAG file.

1 – Startup the package after making the SVOL writable. The risk of using this option is the SVOL data might be inconsistent and the application might fail. However, there is also a chance that the data is actually consistent, and it is okay to startup the application.

If the package has been configured for a three data center environment, this parameter is applicable only when the package is attempting to start up in either the primary (DC1) or secondary (DC2) data center. This parameter is not relevant in (the third data center) in the recovery cluster. Use this parameter's default value in the third data center.

CLUSTER\_TYPE

This parameter defines the clustering environment in which the script is used. Must be set to "metro" if this is a Metrocluster environment and "continental" if this is a Continentalclusters environment. A type of "metro" is supported only when the HP Metrocluster product is installed. A type of "continental" is supported only when the HP Continentalclusters product is installed.

If the package is configured for three data centers (3DC), the value of this parameter must be set to "metro" for DC1 and DC2 nodes and "continental" for DC3 nodes.

DEVICE\_GROUP

The Raid Manager device group for this package. This device group is defined in the `/etc/horcm<#>.conf` file.

This parameter is not required to be set for a package configured for three data centers environment. Device groups for three data center's packages have new parameters.

FENCE

Fence level. Possible values are NEVER, DATA, and ASYNC. Use ASYNC for improved performance over long distances.

If a Raid Manager device group contains multiple items where either the PVOL or SVOL devices reside on more than a single P9000 and XP Series array, then the Fence level must be set to "data" in order to prevent the possibility of inconsistent data on the remote side if an Continuous Access link or an array goes down. The side effect of the "data"

fence level is that if the package is running and a link goes down, an array goes down, or the remote data center goes down, then write(1) calls in the package application will fail, causing the package to fail.

---

**NOTE:** The Continuous Access Journal is used for asynchronous data replication. Fence level `ascyn` is used for a journal group pair.

---

If the package is configured for three data centers (3DC), this parameter holds the fence level of device group between DC1 and DC2. As the device group between DC1 and DC2 is always synchronous, the fence level either “data” or “never”. The fence level of device group between DC2 and DC3 or DC1 and DC3 is always assumed to be “async” and user need not mention it.

HORCMINST

This is the instance of the Raid Manager that the control script will communicate with. This instance of Raid Manager must be started on all the nodes before this package can be successfully started. (Note: If this variable is not exported, Raid Manager commands used in this script might fail).

HORCMPERM

This variable supports the security feature, RAID Manager Protection Facility on the Continuous Access devices. (Note: If the RAID Manager Protection Facility is disabled, set this variable to MGRNOINST. This is the default value).

HORCTIMEOUT

(Default = 360)

This variable is used only in asynchronous mode when the `horctakeover` command is issued; it is ignored in synchronous mode. The value is used as the timeout value in the `horctakeover` command, `-t <timeout>`. The value is the time to wait while `horctakeover` re-synchronizes the delta data from the PVOL to the SVOL. It is used for swap-takeover and SVOL takeover. If the timeout value is reached and a timeout occurs, `horctakeover` returns the value `EX_EWSTOT`. The unit is seconds.

In asynchronous mode, when there is an Continuous Access link failure, both the PVOL and SVOL sides change to a PSUE state. However, this change will not take place until the Continuous Access link timeout value, configured in the Service Processor (SVP), has been reached. If the `horctakeover` command is issued during this timeout period, the `horctakeover` command will fail if its timeout value is less than that of the Continuous Access link timeout. Therefore, it is important to set the `HORCTIMEOUT` variable to a value greater than the Continuous Access link timeout value. The default Continuous Access link timeout value is 5 minutes (300 seconds). A suggested value for `HORCTIMEOUT` is 360 seconds.

During package startup, the default startup timeout value of the package is set to `NO_TIMEOUT` in the package ASCII file. However, if there is a need to set a startup timeout value, then the package startup timeout value must be greater than the `HORCTIMEOUT` value, which is greater than the Continuous Access link timeout value:

```
Pkg Startup Timeout > HORCTIMEOUT >
Continuous Access link timeout value
```

For Continuous Access Journal mode package, journal volumes in PVOL might contain a significant amount of journal data to be transferred to SVOL. Also, the package startup time might increase significantly when the package fails over and waits for all of the journal data to be flushed. The `HORCTIMEOUT` must be set long enough to accommodate the outstanding data transfer from PVOL to SVOL.

`MULTIPLE_PVOL_OR_SVOL_FRAME_FOR_PKG` (Default = 0)

This parameter must be set to 1 if a PVOL or an SVOL for this package resides on more than P9000 and XP frames. Currently, only a value of 0 is supported for this parameter.

---

**NOTE:** Future releases might allow a value of 1.

---

Values:

0—(Default) Single frame.

1—Multiple frames. If this parameter is set to 1, then the device group must be created with the “data” fence level, *and* the `FENCE` parameter must be set to “data” in this script.

`DTS_PKG_DIR`

If the package is a legacy package, then this variable contains the full path name of the package directory. If the package is a modular package, then this variable contains the full path name of the directory where the Metrocluster `xpca` environment file is located.

`WAITTIME`

Seconds to wait for every “`pairevwait`” interval. (Note: do not set this to less than 300 seconds because the disks have some long final processing when the copy state reaches 100%).

The following list the monitor specific variables that have been modified or added for Metrocluster with Continuous Access for P9000 and XP. If a monitor variable is not defined (commented out), the default value is used:

`MON_POLL_INTERVAL` (Default = 10 minutes)

This parameter defines the polling interval for the monitor service (if configured). If the parameter is not defined (commented out), the default value is 10 minutes. Otherwise, the value set to the desired polling interval in minutes.

`MON_NOTIFICATION_FREQUENCY` (Default = 0)

This parameter controls the frequency of notification messages sent when the state of the device group remains the same. If the value is set to 0, then the monitor will only send notifications when the device group state changes. If the value is set to *n* where *n* is greater than 0, the monitor will send a notification every *n*th polling interval or when the device group state has changed. If the parameter is not defined (commented out), the default value is 0.

`MON_NOTIFICATION_EMAIL` (Default = empty string)

This parameter defines the email addresses that the monitor will use to send email notifications. The variable must use fully qualified email addresses. If multiple email addresses are defined, the comma must be used as a separator. If the parameter is not defined (commented out) or the default

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| MON_NOTIFICATION_SYSLOG  | <p>value is an empty string, this will indicate to the monitor that no email notifications sent.</p> <p>(Default = 0)</p> <p>This parameter defines whether the monitor will send notifications to the syslog file. When the parameter is set to 0, the monitor will NOT send notifications to the syslog file. When the parameter is set to 1, the monitor will send notifications to the syslog file. If the parameter is not defined (commented out), the default value is 0.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| MON_NOTIFICATION_CONSOLE | <p>(Default = 0)</p> <p>This parameter defines whether the monitor will send console notifications. When the parameter is set to 0, the monitor will NOT send console notifications. When the parameter is set to 1, the monitor will send console notifications. If the parameter is not defined (commented out), the default value is 0.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| AUTO_RESYNC              | <p>This parameter defines the pre-defined resynchronization actions that the monitor can perform when the package is on the PVOL side and the monitor detects the Continuous Access data replication link is down. If the variable is not defined or commented, the default value of 0 is used.</p> <p>Values:</p> <p>0 — (Default) When the parameter is set to 0, the monitor will not perform any resynchronization actions.</p> <p>1 — When the parameter is set to 1 and the data replication link is down, the monitor will split the remote BC (if configured) and try to resynchronize the device. Until the resynchronization starts, the monitor will try to resynchronize every polling interval. Once the device group has been completely resynchronized, the monitor will resynchronize the remote BC.</p> <p>2 — When the parameter is set to 2 and the data replication link is down, the monitor will only try to perform resynchronization if a file named <code>MON_RESYNC</code> exists in the package directory (<code>PKGDIR</code>). The monitor will not perform any operations to the remote BC (that is, split and resynchronize the remote BC). Therefore, this setting is used when you want to manage the remote BC</p> |

## Package Attributes for Continentalcluster with Continuous Access EVA

This appendix lists all Package Attributes for Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA. HP recommends that you use the default settings for most of these variables, so exercise caution when modifying them:

|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CLUSTER_TYPE | <p>This parameter defines the clustering environment in which the script is used. You must set this to "metro" if this is a Metrocluster environment and "continental" if this is a Continentalclusters environment. A type of "metro" is supported only when the HP Metrocluster product is installed. A type of "continental" is supported only when the HP Continentalclusters product is installed.</p> |
| DTS PKG DIR  | <p>If the package is a legacy package, this variable contains the full path name of the package directory. If the package is a modular package, this variable contains the full path</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

|                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                            | name of the directory where the Metrocluster <code>caeva</code> environment file is located.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>DT_APPLICATION_STARTUP_POLICY</code> | <p>This parameter defines the preferred policy to start the application with respect to the state of the data in the local volumes. It must be set to one of the following two policies:</p> <p><code>Availability_Preferred</code>: The user chooses this policy if he prefers application availability. Metrocluster software allows the application to start if the data is consistent even if the data is not current.</p> <p><code>Data_Currency_Preferred</code>: The user chooses this policy if he prefers the application to start on consistent and current data. Metrocluster software allows the application to operate only on current data. This policy only focuses on the state of the local data (with respect to the application) being consistent and current.</p> <p>A package can be forced to start on a node by creating the <code>FORCEFLAG</code> in the package directory.</p> |
| <code>WAIT_TIME</code>                     | <p>(0 or greater than 0 [in minutes])</p> <p>This parameter defines the timeout, in minutes, to wait for completion of the data merging or copying for the DR group before startup of the package on destination volume.</p> <p>If <code>WAIT_TIME</code> is greater than zero, and if the state of DR group is "merging in progress" or "copying in progress", Metrocluster software waits until <code>WAIT_TIME</code> value for the merging or copying is complete. If <code>WAIT_TIME</code> expires and merging or copying is still in progress, the package fails to start with an error.</p> <p>If <code>WAIT_TIME</code> is 0 (default value), and if the state of DR group is "merging in progress" or "copying in progress" state, Metrocluster software will not wait and will return an exit 1 code to Serviceguard package manager. The package fails to start with an error.</p>           |
| <code>DR_GROUP_NAME</code>                 | The name of the DR group used by this package. The DR group name is defined when the DR group is created.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>DC1_STORAGE_WORLD_WIDE_NAME</code>   | The world wide name of the EVA storage system that resides in Data Center 1. This storage system name is defined when the storage is initialized.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>DC1_SMIS_LIST</code>                 | <p>A list of the management servers that reside in Data Center 1. Multiple names can be defined by using commas as separators.</p> <p>If a connection to the first management server fails, attempts are made to connect to the subsequent management servers in their order of specification.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>DC1_HOST_LIST</code>                 | A list of the clustered nodes that reside in Data Center 1. Multiple names can be defined by using commas as separators.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>DC2_STORAGE_WORLD_WIDE_NAME</code>   | The world wide name of the EVA storage system that resides in Data Center 2. This storage system name is defined when the storage is initialized.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>DC2_SMIS_LIST</code>                 | A list of the management servers that reside in Data Center 2. Multiple names can be defined by using commas as separators.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |



|                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                     | If a connection to the first management server fails, attempts are made to connect to the subsequent management servers in their order of specification..                                                                                                                                                                        |
| DC2_HOST_LIST                       | A list of the clustered nodes that reside in Data Center 2. Multiple names can be defined by using commas as separators.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| QUERY_TIME_OUT(Default 120 seconds) | Sets the time in seconds to wait for a response from the SMI-S CIMOM in storage management appliance. The minimum recommended value is 20 seconds. If the value is set to be smaller than 20 seconds, Metrocluster software might time out before getting the response from SMI-S, and the package fails to start with an error. |

## Package Attributes for Continentalcluster with EMC SRDF

This appendix lists all Serviceguard package attributes that have been modified or added for Metrocluster with EMC SRDF. HP recommends that you use the default settings for most of these variables, so exercise caution when modifying them:

|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AUTOR1RWSUSP | Default: 0<br><br>This variable is used to indicate whether a package must be automatically started when it fails over from an R1 host to another R1 host and the device group is in suspended state. If it sets to 0, the package will halt unless <code>/\${PKGDIR}/FORCEFLAG</code> file has been created. The package halts because it is not known what has caused this condition. This caused by an operational error or a Symmetrix internal event, such as primary memory full. If in this situation you want to automatically start the package, <code>AUTOR1RWSUSP</code> must be set to 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| AUTOR1RWNL   | Default: 0<br><br>This variable indicates that when the package is being started on an R1 host, the Symmetrix is in a Read/Write state, and the SRDF links are down, the package automatically started. Although the script cannot verify the state of the Symmetrix on the R2 side to validate conditions, the Symmetrix on the R1 side is in a 'normal' state. To require operator intervention before starting the package under these conditions, set <code>AUTOR1RWNL=1</code> and create the file <code>/etc/cmcluster/package_name/FORCEFLAG</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| AUTOR1UIP    | Default: 1<br><br>This variable indicates that when the package is being started on an R1 host and the Symmetrix is being synchronized from the Symmetrix on the R2 side, the package will halt unless the operator creates the <code>/\${PKGDIR}/FORCEFLAG</code> file. The package halts because performance degradation of the application will occur while the resynchronization is in progress. More importantly, it is better to wait for the resynchronization to finish to guarantee that the data are consistent even in the case of a rolling disaster where a second failure occurs before the first failure is recovered from. To <i>always</i> automatically start the package even when resynchronization is in progress, set <code>AUTOR1UIP=0</code> . Doing so will result in inconsistent data in case of a rolling disaster. |
| AUTOR2WDNL   | Default: 1<br><br><code>AUTOR2WDNL=1</code> indicates that when the package is being started on an R2 host, the Symmetrix is in a Write-disabled state, and the SRDF links are down, the package will not be started. Since we cannot verify the state of the Symmetrix on the R1 side to validate conditions,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

the data on the R2 side might be non-current and thus a risk that data loss will occur when starting the package up on the R2 side. To have automatic package startup under these conditions, set `AUTOR2WDNL=0`

`AUTOR2RWNL`

Default: 1

`AUTOR2RWNL=1` indicates that when the package is being started on an R2 host, the Symmetrix is in a read/write state, and the SRDF links are down, the package will not be started. Since we cannot verify the state of the Symmetrix on the R1 side to validate conditions, the data on the R2 side might be non-current and thus a risk that data loss will occur when starting the package up on the R2 side. To have automatic package startup under these conditions, set `AUTOR2RWNL=0`

`AUTOR2XXNL`

Default: 0

A value of 0 for this variable indicates that when the package is being started on an R2 host and at least one (but not all) SRDF links are down, the package automatically started. This will normally be the case when the 'Partitioned+Suspended' RDF Pairstate exists. We cannot verify the state of all Symmetrix volumes on the R1 side to validate conditions, but the Symmetrix on the R2 side must be in a 'normal' state. To require operator intervention before starting the package under these conditions, set `AUTOR2XXNL=1`.

`AUTOSWAPR2`

Default: 0

A value of 0 for this variable indicates that when the package is failing over to Data Center 2, it will not perform R1/R2 swap. To perform an R1/R2 swap, set `AUTOSWAPR2=1/AUTOSWAPR2=2`. This allows an automatic R1/R2 swap to occur only when the SRDF link and the two Symmetrix are properly functioning. When `AUTOSWAPR2` is set to 1, the package will attempt to failover the device group to Data Center 2, followed by R1/R2 swap. If either of these operations fails, the package will fail to start on Data Center 2. When `AUTOSWAPR2` is set to 2, the package will continue to start up even if R1/R2 swap fails, provided the failover succeeds. In this scenario, the data will not be protected remotely. `AUTOSWAPR2` cannot be set to 1 or 2 if `CONSISTENCYGROUPS` is set to 1.

Verify you have the minimum requirements for R1/R2 Swapping by referring to most up-to-date version of the Metrocluster release notes.

`AUTOSPLITR1`

Default: 0

This variable is used to indicate whether a package is allowed to start when it fails over from an R1 host to another R1 host when the device group is in the split state. A value of 0 for this variable indicates that the package startup attempt will fail. To allow startup of the package in this situation, the variable must be set to a value of 1.

`CLUSTER_TYPE`

This parameter defines the clustering environment in which the script is used. This is, set to "metro" if this is a Metrocluster environment and "continental" if this is a Continentalclusters environment. A type of "continental" is supported only when the HP Continentalclusters product is installed.

`CONSISTENCYGROUPS`

Default: 0

This parameter tells Metrocluster whether or not consistency groups were used in configuring the R1 and R2 volumes on the Symmetrix frames. A value of 0 is the normal setting if you are not using consistency groups. A value of 1 indicates that you are using

consistency groups. (Consistency groups are required for M by N configurations.)

If `CONSISTENCYGROUPS` is set to 1, `AUTOSWAPR2` cannot be set to 1. Ensure that you have the minimum requirements for Consistency Groups by referring to Metrocluster release notes.

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>DEVICE_GROUP</code> | This variable contains the name of the Symmetrix device group for the package on that node, which contains the name of the consistency group in an M by N configuration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>DTS_PKG_DIR</code>  | If the package is a legacy package, then this variable contains the full path name of the package directory. If the package is a modular package, then this variable contains the full path name of the directory where the Metrocluster SRDF environment file is located.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>RDF_MODE</code>     | Default:<br>This parameter defines the data replication modes for the device group. The supported mode are "sync" for synchronous and "async" for Asynchronous. If <code>RDF_MODE</code> is not defined, synchronous mode is assumed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>RETRY</code>        | Default: 60.<br>This is the number of times a SymCLI command is repeated before returning an error. Use the default value for the first package, and slightly larger numbers for additional packages making sure that the total of <code>RETRY*RETRYTIME</code> is approximately 5 minutes.<br>Larger values for <code>RETRY</code> might cause the start-up time for the package to increase when there are multiple packages starting concurrently in the cluster that access the Symmetrix arrays.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>RETRYTIME</code>    | Default: 5.<br>This is the is the number of seconds between retries. The default value of 5 seconds must be used for the first package. The values must be slightly different for other packages. <code>RETRYTIME</code> must increase by two seconds for every package. The product of <code>RETRY * RETRYTIME</code> must be approximately five minutes. These variables are used to decide how often and how many times to retry the Symmetrix status and state change commands. Larger values for <code>RETRYTIME</code> might cause the start-up time for the package to increase when there are multiple packages starting concurrently in the cluster that access the Symmetrix arrays.                                                                                   |
| <code>SYNCTIMEOUT</code>  | Default: 0.<br>This variable denotes the number of seconds to wait for resync to complete after failback of the Symmetrix device group. If you set the value to 0, then the package will start after failback without waiting for resynchronization to complete. If you set the value to 1, then the package waits till resynchronization is complete before starting up. If <code>SYNCTIMEOUT</code> is set to any value from 5 to 36000, then the package will wait the specified time for resynchronization to complete after failback. If resynchronization does not complete even after the specified time, then the package will fail to start up; if resynchronization completes before that, then package will start up immediately after resynchronization is complete. |

---

## F Legacy packages

### Migrating complex workloads using Legacy SG SMS CVM/CFS Packages to Modular SG SMS CVM/CFS Packages with minimal downtime

The procedure to migrate all the legacy SG SMS CVM/CFS packages managed by a Site Controller package to modular SG SMS CVM/CFS packages as follows:

1. Complete the following steps on the recovery cluster where the complex workload packages are not running:
  - a. Take a backup of the application package configurations and delete the application packages managed by the Site Controller on the recovery cluster. After completing this step, dependents must not exist on the legacy CFS mount point MNP packages. In case CFS mount point MNP packages have not been configured, this step will ensure that there are no dependents on the legacy CVM diskgroup MNP packages:

```
# cmgetconf -p <application_pkg_name>
<backedup_application_config>
# cmdeleteconf -p <application_pkg_name>
```
  - b. Use the `cfsmntadm` command to delete all the legacy disk group and mount point MNP packages managed by the Site Controller from a node in the recovery cluster. Use the `cfsdgadm` command if there are no CFS mounts configured.

```
# cfsmntadm delete <mount_point>
or
# cfsdgadm delete <cvm_diskgroup_name>
```
  - c. Configure all the CVM diskgroups and the mount points required by an application in a single modular SMS CFS /CVM package. Add the EMS resource and apply the configuration.

```
# cmapplyconf -P <modular_cfs_package_file>
```
  - d. Edit the application's configuration file and change its dependency from legacy CFS mount point or CVM disk group MNP packages to the newly created modular SMS CFS/CVM package. Apply this package configuration:

```
# cmapplyconf -P <backedup_application_config>
```
  - e. Get the current configuration of the Site Controller package on recovery cluster. Modify the Site Controller configuration with the new set of packages that must be managed on the recovery cluster.
2. Halt the Site Controller package in the primary cluster. This will halt all the complex workload packages that are running on the primary site.
3. Restart the Site Controller in the primary cluster. The complex workload will start up on the recovery site using the new modular SMS CFS/CVM packages.
4. Repeat step 1 that was performed on the recovery cluster initially, in the primary cluster.
5. Move the site controller back to the primary cluster.

### Migrating legacy to modular packages

#### Migrating legacy monitor package

With Continentalclusters version A.08.00, the monitoring daemon `ccmonpkg` that was previously configured as a legacy package can be migrated to a modular style package.

To migrate the monitoring package, `ccmonpkg`, to a modular package:

1. Halt the monitoring daemon package.  
# `cmhaltpkg ccmontpkg`
2. Generate the modular configuration file.  
# `cmmigratepkg -p <package_name> -o <modular__ccmontpkg.conf>`
3. Validate the package configuration file.  
# `cmcheckconf -P modular_ccmontpkg.conf`
4. Apply the package configuration.  
# `cmapplyconf -P modular_ccmontpkg.conf`
5. Start the monitoring daemon package.  
# `cmmodpkg -e ccmontpkg`

## Migrating legacy style primary and recovery packages to modular packages

### Migrating legacy style primary and recovery packages to modular packages when using Continuous Access P9000 and XP

Primary and recovery packages configured as legacy packages in an existing Continentalclusters environment using Continuous Access P9000 and XP, can be migrated to modular packages using the procedure described in this section. However, the migration steps vary based on the HP Serviceguard version and the legacy package configuration. While completing the migration procedure, multiple package configuration files are created. Only the final package configuration file that is created at the end of the procedure must be applied.

To migrate legacy style primary and recovery packages to modular packages using Continentalclusters A.08.00:

1. Create a modular package configuration file for the legacy package.

```
# cmmigratepkg -p <package_name> [-s] -o <modular_sg_conf>
```

- ① **IMPORTANT:** This command generates a package configuration file. Do not apply this configuration file until you complete the migration procedure. For more information on the `cmmigratepkg` command, see the *Managing Serviceguard* manual available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> —> *HP Serviceguard*.

2. If the Continentalclusters legacy package uses ECM Toolkit, then generate a new modular package configuration file using the package configuration file generated in the step 1. For Example, if the legacy package uses the ECM Oracle Toolkit, generate a new modular package configuration file with the following command:

```
# cmmakepkg -i modular_sg.conf -m ecmt/oracle/oracle -t\  
haoracle.conf modular_sg_ecm.conf
```

3. Create a modular package configuration file using the package configuration file created in step 1.

When using HP Serviceguard A.11.18, complete the following steps to include Continentalclusters modules in the new modular package configuration file:

- a. Include the Continentalclusters module in the new configuration file.

```
# cmmakepkg -i <modular_sg_ecm.conf> -m dts/ccxpca\  
<modular_sg_ecm_cc.conf>
```

- b. Copy the environment variable values from the Metrocluster environment file present in the package directory, to the variables present in the newly created modular package configuration file.

When using HP Serviceguard A.11.19 or later versions, run the following command to include the Continentalclusters modules in the new modular package configuration file:

```
# cmmakepkg -i <modular_sg_ecm.conf> -m dts/ccxpca -t\  
<modular_sg_ecm_cc.conf>
```

- ```
<path_to_env_file> <modular_sg_ecm_cc.conf>
```
4. Halt the package.
 

```
# cmhaltpkg <package_name>
```
  5. Validate the new modular package configuration file.
 

```
# cmcheckconf -P <modular_sg_ecm_cc.conf>
```
  6. Apply the package configuration with the modular configuration file created in step 3.
 

```
# cmapplyconf -P <modular_sg_ecm_cc.conf>
```
  7. Run the package on a node in the Serviceguard cluster.
 

```
# cmrunpkg -n <node_name> <package_name>
```
  8. Enable global switching for the package.
 

```
# cmmodpkg -e <package_name>
```

## Migrating legacy style primary and recovery packages to modular packages using Continuous access EVA

Legacy packages can be migrated to modular packages using the procedure described in this section. However, the migration steps vary based on the HP Serviceguard version and the legacy package configuration. While completing the migration procedure, multiple package configuration files are created. Only the final package configuration file that is created at the end of the procedure must be applied.

To migrate Continuous Access EVA legacy packages to modular packages using Continentalclusters A.08.00:

1. Create a modular package configuration file for the Continentalclusters legacy package.
 

```
# cmmigratepkg -p <package_name> [-s] -o <modular_sg_conf>
```

---

① **IMPORTANT:** This command generates a package configuration file. Do not apply this configuration file until you complete the migration procedure. For more information on the `cmmigratepkg` command, see the *Managing Serviceguard* manual available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> → *HP Serviceguard*.

---
2. If the Continentalclusters legacy package uses ECM Toolkit, then generate a new modular package configuration file using the package configuration file generated in the step 1. For Example, if the legacy package uses the ECM Oracle toolkit, generate a new modular package configuration file with the following command:
 

```
# cmmakepkg -i modular_sg.conf -m ecmt/oracle/oracle -t\
haoracle.conf modular_sg_ecm.conf
```
3. Create a modular package configuration file using the package configuration file created in step 1.
 

When using HP Serviceguard A.11.18, complete the following steps to include Continentalclusters modules in the new modular package configuration file:

  - a. Include the Continentalclusters module in the new configuration file.
 

```
# cmmakepkg -i <modular_sg_ecm.conf> -m dts/cccaeva\
<modular_sg_ecm_cc.conf>
```
  - b. Copy the environment variable values from the Metrocluster environment file present in the package directory, to the variables present in the newly created modular package configuration file.

When using HP Serviceguard A.11.19 or later versions, run the following command to include the Continentalclusters modules in the new modular package configuration file:

```
# cmmakepkg -i <modular_sg_ecm.conf> -m dts/cccaeva -t\
<path_to_env_file> <modular_sg_ecm_cc.conf>
```

4. Halt the package.  
# `cmhaltpkg <package_name>`
5. Validate the package configuration file.  
# `cmcheckconf -P <modular_sg_eem_cc.conf>`
6. Apply the package configuration with the modular configuration file created in step 3.  
# `cmapplyconf -P <modular_sg_eem_cc.conf>`
7. Run the package on a node in the Serviceguard cluster.  
# `cmrunpkg -n <node_name> <package_name>`
8. Enable global switching for the package.  
# `cmmodpkg -e <package_name>`

## Migrating legacy style primary and recovery packages to modular packages using EMC SRDF

Continentalclusters legacy packages can be migrated to modular packages using the procedure listed in this section. However, the migration steps vary based on the HP Serviceguard version and the legacy package configuration. While completing the migration procedure, multiple package configuration files are created. Only the final package configuration file that is created at the end of the procedure must be applied.

To migrate Continentalclusters with EMC SRDF legacy packages to modular packages using Continentalclusters A.08.00:

1. Create a modular package configuration file for the legacy package.

```
# cmmigratepkg -p <package_name> [-s] -o <modular_sg.conf>
```

- ① **IMPORTANT:** This command generates a package configuration file. Do not apply this configuration file until you complete the migration procedure. For more information on the `cmmigratepkg` command, see the *Managing Serviceguard* manual available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> → *HP Serviceguard*.

2. If the Continentalclusters legacy package uses ECM toolkits, then generate a new modular package configuration file using the package configuration file generated in the step 1. For Example, if the legacy package uses the ECM Oracle toolkit, generate a new modular package configuration file with the following command:

```
# cmmakepkg -i modular_sg.conf -m ecmt/oracle/oracle -t\  
haoracle.conf modular_sg_eem.conf
```

3. Create a modular package configuration file using the package configuration file created in step 1.

When using HP Serviceguard A.11.18, complete the following steps to include Continentalclusters modules in the new modular package configuration file:

- a. Include the Continentalclusters module in the new configuration file.

```
# cmmakepkg -i <modular_sg_eem.conf> -m dts/ccsrdf\  
<modular_sg_eem_cc.conf>
```

- b. Copy the environment variable values from the Metrocluster environment file present in the package directory, to the variables present in the newly created modular package configuration file.

When using HP Serviceguard A.11.19 or later versions, run the following command to include the Continentalclusters modules in the new modular package configuration file:

```
# cmmakepkg -i <modular_sg_eem.conf> -m dts/ccsrdf -t\  
<path_to_env_file> <modular_sg_eem_cc.conf>
```

4. Halt the package.

```
# cmhaltpkg <package_name>
```

5. Validate the new package configuration file.  
# `cmcheckconf -P <modular_sg_ecm_cc.conf>`
6. Apply the package configuration with the modular configuration file created in step 3.  
# `cmapplyconf -P <modular_sg_ecm_cc.conf>`
7. Run the package on a node in the Serviceguard cluster.  
# `cmrunpkg -n <node_name> <package_name>`
8. Enable global switching for the package.  
# `cmmodpkg -e <package_name>`

## Configuring legacy packages

### Configuring the monitor package in legacy style

To configure the monitoring daemon in legacy style:

1. On the node where the configuration is located, create a directory for the monitor package.  
# `mkdir /etc/cmcluster/ccmonpkg`
2. Copy the template files from the `/opt/cmconcl/scripts` directory to the `/etc/cmcluster/ccmonpkg` directory.  
# `cp /opt/cmconcl/scripts/ccmonpkg.* /etc/cmcluster/ccmonpkg`
  - `ccmonpkg.config` is the ASCII package configuration file template for the Continentalclusters monitoring application.
  - `ccmonpkg.cntl` is the control script file for the Continentalclusters monitoring application.

---

**NOTE:** HP recommends editing the `ccmonpkg.cntl` file. However, if preferred, change the default `SERVICE_RESTART` value “-r 3” to a value that fits your environment.

---
3. Edit the package configuration file (suggested name of `/etc/cmcluster/ccmonpkg/ccmonpkg.config`) to match the cluster configuration:
  - a. Add the names of all the nodes in the cluster on which the monitor might run.
  - b. `AUTO_RUN` must be set to YES so that the monitor package can fail over between local nodes.

---

**NOTE:** For all primary and recovery packages, `AUTO_RUN` is always set to NO.

---

4. Skip this step if DR Rehearsal feature is not used.

If the rehearsal feature is configured, then provide the following information of the filesystem and volume group used as a state directory in the monitor package control file

`ccmonpkg.cntl`.

- volume group name
- mount point
- logical volume name
- filesystem type
- mount and unmount options
- fsck options

For Example,

```
VG[0]="ccvg"
LV[0]=/dev/ccvg/lvol1;
FS[0]=/opt/cmconcl/statedir;
FS_MOUNT_OPT[0]="-o rw";
FS_UMOUNT_OPT[0]="";
```



```
FS_FSCK_OPT[0]="";
FS_TYPE[0]="vxfs"
```

5. Use the `cmcheckconf` command to validate the package.

```
# cmcheckconf -P ccmontpkg.config
```

6. Copy the package configuration file `ccmontpkg.config` and control script `ccmontpkg.cnt1` to the monitor package directory (default name `/etc/cmcluster/ccmontpkg`) on all the other nodes in the cluster. Ensure this file is executable.

7. Use the `cmapplyconf` command to add the package to the Serviceguard configuration.

```
# cmapplyconf -P ccmontpkg.config
```

The following sample package configuration file (comments have been left out) shows a typical package configuration for a Continentalclusters monitor package:

```
PACKAGE_NAME ccmontpkg
PACKAGE_TYPE FAILOVER
FAILOVER_POLICY CONFIGURED_NODE
FAILBACK_POLICY MANUAL
NODE_NAME LAnode1
NODE_NAME LAnode2
AUTO_RUN YES
LOCAL_LAN_FAILOVER_ALLOWED YES
NODE_FAIL_FAST_ENABLED NO
RUN_SCRIPT /etc/cmcluster/ccmontpkg/ccmontpkg.cnt1
RUN_SCRIPT_TIMEOUT NO_TIMEOUT
HALT_SCRIPT /etc/cmcluster/ccmontpkg/ccmontpkg.cnt1
HALT_SCRIPT_TIMEOUT NO_TIMEOUT
SERVICE_NAME ccmontpkg.srv
SERVICE_FAIL_FAST_ENABLED NO
SERVICE_HALT_TIMEOUT 300
```

## Configuring primary and recovery packages as legacy packages when using Continuous Access P9000 and XP

To configure Primary or Recovery Package on the Source Disk Site or Target Disk Site in legacy style:

1. Create a directory `/etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>` for the package.

```
# mkdir /etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>
```

2. Create a package configuration file.

```
# cd /etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>
```

```
# cmmakepkg -p <pkgname>.ascii
```

Customize the package configuration file as appropriate to your application. Be sure to include the pathname of the control script (`/etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>/<pkgname>.cnt1`) for the `RUN_SCRIPT` and `HALT_SCRIPT` parameters.

Set the `AUTO_RUN` flag to `NO`. This is to ensure the package will not start when the cluster starts. Only after primary packages start, use `cmmodpkg` to enable package switching on all primary packages. Enabling package switching in the package configuration must automatically start the primary package when the cluster starts. However, if there is a source disk site disaster, resulting in the recovery package starting and running on the target disk site, the primary package must not be started until after first stopping the recovery package.

Do not use `cmmodpkg` to enable package switching on any recovery package. Package switching on a recovery package automatically set by the `cmrecovercl` command on the target disk site when it successfully starts the recovery package.

3. Create a package control script.

```
# cmmakepkg -s pkgname.cntl
```

Customize the control script as appropriate to your application using the guidelines in the *Managing Serviceguard user's guide*. Standard Serviceguard package customizations include modifying the VG, LV, FS, IP, SUBNET, SERVICE\_NAME, SERVICE\_CMD, and SERVICE\_RESTART parameters. Set LV\_UMOUNT\_COUNT to 1 or greater.

---

**NOTE:** Some of the control script variables, such as VG and LV, on the target disk site must be the same as on the source disk site. Some of the control script variables, such as, FS, SERVICE\_NAME, SERVICE\_CMD and SERVICE\_RESTART are probably the same as on the source disk site. Some of the control script variables, such as IP and SUBNET, on the target disk site are probably different from those on the source disk site. Ensure that you review all the variables accordingly.

---

4. Add customer-defined run and halt commands in the appropriate places according to the needs of the application. Refer to the latest version of the Managing Serviceguard manual available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> → HP Serviceguard for more detailed information on these functions.
5. Copy the environment file template `/opt/cmcluster/toolkit/SGCA/ x pca .env` to the package directory, naming it `pkgname_xpca`.

```
# cp /opt/cmcluster/toolkit/SGCA/xpca.env \  
/etc/cmcluster/pkgname/pkgname_xpca.env
```

6. Edit the environment file `<pkgname>_xpca.env` as follows:
  - a. If necessary, add the path where the Raid Manager software binaries have been installed to the PATH environment variable. If the software is in the usual location, `/usr/bin`, you can just uncomment the line in the script.
  - b. Uncomment the behavioral configuration environment variables starting with AUTO. HP recommends that you retain the default values of these variables unless you have a specific business requirement to change them. See “Package attributes” (page 88) for explanation of these variables.
  - c. Uncomment the PKGDIR variable and set it to the full path name of the directory where the control script has been placed. This directory, which is used for status data files, must be unique for every package. For Example, set PKGDIR to `/etc/cmcluster/package_name`, removing any quotes around the file names.
  - d. Uncomment the DEVICE\_GROUP variable and set it to this package's Raid Manager device group name, as specified in the Raid Manager configuration file.
  - e. Uncomment the HORCMPerm variable and use the default value MGRNOINST if Raid Manager protection facility is not used or disabled. If Raid Manager protection facility is enabled set it to the name of the HORCM permission file.
  - f. Uncomment the HORCMINST variable and set it to the Raid Manager instance name used by Metrocluster/Continuous Access.
  - g. Uncomment the FENCE variable and set it to either ASYNC, NEVER, or DATA according to your business requirements or special Metrocluster requirements. This variable is used to compare with the actual fence level returned by the array.
  - h. If using asynchronous data replication, set the HORCTIMEOUT variable to a value greater than the side file timeout value configured with the Service Processor (SVP), but less than the RUN\_SCRIPT\_TIMEOUT set in the package configuration file. The default setting is the side file timeout value + 60 seconds.
  - i. Uncomment the CLUSTER\_TYPE variable and set it to continental.
7. Distribute Metrocluster/Continuous Access configuration, environment and control script files to other nodes in the cluster by using ftp, rcp or scp:

```
# rcp -p /etc/cmcluster/pkgname/* \  
other_node:/etc/cmcluster/pkgname
```

See the example script `Samples/ftpit` to see how to semi-automate the copy using ftp.

This script assumes the package directories already exist on all the nodes.

Using ftp might be preferable at your organization, because it does not require the use of a `.rhosts` file for root. Root access via `.rhosts` might create a security issue.

8. Verify that every node in the Serviceguard cluster has the following files in the directory `/etc/cmcluster/pkgname`:
  - `pkgname.cntl` Metrocluster/Continuous Access package control script
  - `pkgname_xpca.env` Metrocluster/Continuous Access environment file
  - `pkgname.ascii` Serviceguard package ASCII configuration file
  - `pkgname.sh` Package monitor shell script, if applicable
  - other files Any other scripts you use to manage Serviceguard packages.
9. Check the configuration using the `cmcheckconf -P <pkgname>.config` command, then apply the Serviceguard package configuration using the `cmapplyconf -P <pkgname>.config` command or SAM.

## Configuring primary and recovery packages as legacy packages when using Continuous Access EVA

To configure Primary or Recovery Package on the Source Disk Site or Target Disk Site in legacy style:

1. Create a directory `/etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>` for the package.

```
# mkdir /etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>
```

2. Create a package configuration file.

```
# cd /etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>
```

```
# cmmakepkg -p <pkgname>.ascii
```

Customize the package configuration file as appropriate to your application. Be sure to include the pathname of the control script (`/etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>/<pkgname>.cntl`) for the `RUN_SCRIPT` and `HALT_SCRIPT` parameters.

Set the `AUTO_RUN` flag to `NO`. This is to ensure the package will not start when the cluster starts. Only after primary packages start, use `cmmodpkg` to enable package switching on all primary packages. Enabling package switching in the package configuration must automatically start the primary package when the cluster starts. However, if there is a source disk site disaster, resulting in the recovery package starting and running on the target disk site, the primary package must not be started until after first stopping the recovery package.

Do not use `cmmodpkg` to enable package switching on any recovery package. Package switching on a recovery package automatically set by the `cmrecovercl` command on the target disk site when it successfully starts the recovery package.

3. Create a package control script.

```
# cmmakepkg -s pkgname.cntl
```

Customize the control script as appropriate to your application using the guidelines in the Managing Serviceguard user's guide. Standard Serviceguard package customizations include modifying the `VG`, `LV`, `FS`, `IP`, `SUBNET`, `SERVICE_NAME`, `SERVICE_CMD`, and `SERVICE_RESTART` parameters. Set `LV_UMOUNT_COUNT` to 1 or greater.

---

**NOTE:** Some of the control script variables, such as `VG` and `LV`, on the target disk site must be the same as on the source disk site. Some of the control script variables, such as `FS`, `SERVICE_NAME`, `SERVICE_CMD` and `SERVICE_RESTART` are probably the same as on the source disk site. Some of the control script variables, such as `IP` and `SUBNET`, on the target disk site are probably different from those on the source disk site. Ensure that you review all the variables accordingly.

---

4. Add customer-defined run and halt commands in the appropriate places according to the needs of the application. Refer to the latest version of the Managing Serviceguard manual

available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> —> HP Serviceguard for more detailed information on these functions.

5. Copy the environment file template `/opt/cmcluster/toolkit/SGCA/caeva.env` to the package directory, naming it `pkgname_caeva.env`.

```
# cp /opt/cmcluster/toolkit/SGCA/caeva.env \  
/etc/cmcluster/pkgname/pkgname_caeva.env
```

---

**NOTE:** If not using a package name as a filename for the package control script, it is necessary to follow the convention of the environment file name. This is the combination of the file name of the package control script without the file extension, an underscore and type of the data replication technology (caeva) used. The extension of the file must be `env`.

The following examples demonstrate how the environment file name must be chosen.

For Example:

If the file name of the control script is `pkg.ctrl`, the environment file name must be `pkg_caeva.env`.

For Example:

If the file name of the control script is `control_script.sh`, the environment file name must be `control_script_caeva.env`.

---

6. Edit the environment file `<pkgname>_caeva.env` as follows:

- a. Set the `CLUSTER_TYPE` variable to `continental`.
- b. Set the `PKGDIR` variable to the full path name of the directory where the control script has been placed. This directory, which is used for status data files, must be unique for every package.

For Example,

Set `PKGDIR` to `/etc/cmcluster/package_name`, removing any quotes around the file names. The operator might create the `FORCEFLAG` file in this directory. See “[Package attributes](#)” (page 88) for a description of these variables.

- c. Set the `DT_APPLICATION_STARTUP_POLICY` variable to one of two policies: `Availability_Preferred`, or `Data_Currency_Preferred`.
- d. Set the `WAIT_TIME` variable to the timeout, in minutes, to wait for completion of the data merge from source to destination volume before starting up the package on the destination volume. If the wait time expires and merging is still in progress, the package will fail to start with an error that prevents restarting on any node in the cluster.
- e. Set the `DR_GROUP_NAME` variable to the name of DR Group used by this package. This DR Group name is defined when the DR Group is created.
- f. Set the `DC1_STORAGE_WORLD_WIDE_NAME` variable to the world wide name of the EVA storage system which resides in Data Center 1. This WWN can be found on the front panel of the EVA controller, or from command view EVA UI.
- g. Set the `DC1_SMIS_LIST` variable to the list of Management Servers which resides in Data Center 1. Multiple names are defined using a comma as a separator between the names.  
If a connection to the first management server fails, attempts are made to connect to the subsequent management servers in the order that they are specified.
- h. Set the `DC1_HOST_LIST` variable to the list of clustered nodes which resides in Data Center 1. Multiple names are defined using a comma as a separator between the names.
- i. Set the `DC2_STORAGE_WORLD_WIDE_NAME` variable to the world wide name of the EVA storage system which resides in Data Center 2. This WWN can be found on the front panel of the EVA controller, or from command view EVA UI.
- j. Set the `DC2_SMIS_LIST` variable to the list of Management Server, which resides in Data Center 2. Multiple names are defined using a comma as a separator between the names.  
If a connection to the first management server fails, attempts are made to connect to the subsequent management servers in the order that they are specified.

- k. Set the DC2\_HOST\_LIST variable to the list of clustered nodes which resides in Data Center 2. Multiple names are defined using a comma as a separator between the names.
  - l. Set the QUERY\_TIME\_OUT variable to the number of seconds to wait for a response from the SMI-S CIMOM in Management Server. The default timeout is 300 seconds. The recommended minimum value is 20 seconds.
7. Distribute Metrocluster/Continuous Access configuration, environment and control script files to other nodes in the cluster by using ftp, rcp or scp:
- ```
# rcp -p /etc/cmcluster/pkgname/* \
other_node:/etc/cmcluster/pkgname
```
- See the example script `/opt/cmcluster/toolkit/SGCAEVA/Samples/ftpit` to see how to semi-automate the copy using ftp.
- This script assumes the package directories already exist on all the nodes.
- Using ftp might be preferable at your organization, because it does not require the use of a `.rhosts` file for root. Root access via `.rhosts` might create a security issue.
8. Verify that every node in the Serviceguard cluster has the following files in the directory `/etc/cmcluster/pkgname`:
- `pkgname.cntl` Serviceguard package control script
  - `pkgname_caeva.env` Metrocluster Continuous Access EVA environment file
  - `pkgname.ascii` Serviceguard package ASCII configuration file
  - `pkgname.sh` Package monitor shell script, if applicable
  - other files Any other scripts you use to manage Serviceguard packages.
9. Check the configuration using the `cmcheckconf -P <pkgname>.config` command, then apply the Serviceguard package configuration using the `cmapplyconf -P <pkgname>.config` command or SAM.

## Configuring primary and recovery packages as legacy packages when using EMC SRDF

To configure Primary or Recovery Package on the Source Disk Site or Target Disk Site in legacy style:

1. Create a directory `/etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>` for the package.

```
# mkdir /etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>
```

2. Create a package configuration file.

```
# cd /etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>
```

```
# cmmakepkg -p <pkgname>.ascii
```

Customize the package configuration file as appropriate to your application. Be sure to include the pathname of the control script (`/etc/cmcluster/<pkgname>/<pkgname>.cntl`) for the `RUN_SCRIPT` and `HALT_SCRIPT` parameters.

Set the `AUTO_RUN` flag to `NO`. This is to ensure the package will not start when the cluster starts. Only after primary packages start, use `cmmodpkg` to enable package switching on all primary packages. Enabling package switching in the package configuration must automatically start the primary package when the cluster starts. However, if there is a source disk site disaster, resulting in the recovery package starting and running on the target disk site, the primary package must not be started until after first stopping the recovery package.

Do not use `cmmodpkg` to enable package switching on any recovery package. Package switching on a recovery package automatically set by the `cmrecovercl` command on the target disk site when it successfully starts the recovery package.

3. Create a package control script.

```
# cmmakepkg -s pkgname.cntl
```

Customize the control script as appropriate to your application using the guidelines in the Managing Serviceguard user's guide. Standard Serviceguard package customizations include

modifying the VG, LV, FS, IP, SUBNET, SERVICE\_NAME, SERVICE\_CMD, and SERVICE\_RESTART parameters. Set LV\_UMOUNT\_COUNT to 1 or greater.

---

**NOTE:** Some of the control script variables, such as VG and LV, on the target disk site must be the same as on the source disk site. Some of the control script variables, such as, FS, SERVICE\_NAME, SERVICE\_CMD and SERVICE\_RESTART are probably the same as on the source disk site. Some of the control script variables, such as IP and SUBNET, on the target disk site are probably different from those on the source disk site. Ensure that you review all the variables accordingly.

---

4. Add customer-defined run and halt commands in the appropriate places according to the needs of the application. Refer to the latest version of the Managing Serviceguard manual available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> —> HP Serviceguard for more detailed information on these functions.
5. Copy the environment file template `/opt/cmcluster/toolkit/SGSRDF/srdf.env` to the package directory, naming it `pkgname_srdf.env`.

```
# cp /opt/cmcluster/toolkit/SGSRDF/srdf.env \  
/etc/cmcluster/pkgname/pkgname_srdf.env
```

---

**NOTE:** If not using a package name as a filename for the package control script, it is necessary to follow the convention of the environment file name. This is the combination of the file name of the package control script without the file extension, an underscore and type of the data replication technology (srdf) used. The extension of the file must be env.

The following examples demonstrate how the environment file name must be chosen.

#### Example 1 Example 1

---

If the file name of the control script is `pkg.cntl`, the environment file name must be `pkg_srdf.env`.

---

#### Example 2 Example 2

---

If the file name of the control script is `control_script.sh`, the environment file name must be `control_script_srdf.env`.

---

6. Edit the environment file `<pkgname>_srdf.env` as follows:
  - a. Add the path where the EMC Solutions Enabler software binaries have been installed to the PATH environment variable. The default location is `/usr/symcli/bin`.
  - b. Uncomment AUTO\*environment variables. HP recommends to retain the default values of these variables unless there is a specific business requirement to change them. See “Package attributes” (page 88) for an explanation of these variables.
  - c. Uncomment the PKGDIR variable and set it to the full path name of the directory where the control script has been placed. This directory must be unique for every package and is used for status data files.  
  
For Example,  
Set PKGDIR to `/etc/cmcluster/<pkg_name>`.
  - d. Uncomment the DEVICE\_GROUP variable and set them to the Symmetrix device group names given in the `'symdg list'` command. The DEVICE\_GROUP variable might also contain the consistency group name if using a M by N configuration.
  - e. Uncomment the RETRY and RETRYTIME variables. The defaults must be used for the first package. The values must be slightly different for other packages. RETRYTIME must increase by two seconds for every package. The product of RETRY \* RETRYTIME must be approximately five minutes. These variables are used to decide how often and how many times to retry the Symmetrix status commands.  
  
For Example,

If there are three packages with data on a particular Symmetrix pair (connected by SRDF), then the values for RETRY and RETRYTIME might be as follows:

**Table 8 RETRY and RETRYTIME Values**

|      | RETRY       | RETRYTIME |
|------|-------------|-----------|
| pkgA | 60 attempts | 5 seconds |
| pkgB | 43 attempts | 7 seconds |
| pkgC | 33 attempts | 9 seconds |

- f. Uncomment the CLUSTER\_TYPE variable and set it to "continental".
  - g. Uncomment the RDF\_MODE and set it to "async" or "sync" as appropriate to your application.
7. Distribute Metrocluster/Continuous Access configuration, environment and control script files to other nodes in the cluster by using ftp, rcp or scp:
- ```
# rcp -p /etc/cmcluster/pkgname/* \
other_node:/etc/cmcluster/pkgname
```
- When using ftp, be sure to make the file executable on any destination systems. This script assumes the package directories already exist on all the nodes.
- Using ftp might be preferable at your organization, because it does not require the use of a .rhosts file for root.
- Root access via .rhosts might create a security issue.
8. Verify that every node in the Serviceguard cluster has the following files in the directory /etc/cmcluster/pkgname:
- pkgname.cntl Serviceguard package control script
  - pkgname\_srdf.env Metrocluster EMC SRDF environment file
  - pkgname.ascii Serviceguard package ASCII configuration file
  - pkgname.sh Package monitor shell script, if applicable
  - other files Any other scripts you use to manage Serviceguard packages.
9. Validate the configuration using the `cmcheckconf -P <pkgname>.config` command, then apply the Serviceguard package configuration using the `cmapplyconf -P <pkgname>.config` command

## Configuring storage devices for complex workload

### Configuring the storage device for the complex workload at the Source Disk Site using SG SMS CFS or CVM

To configure a storage device using SG SMS CFS or CVM in a legacy style package:

1. Initialize the source disks of the replication pair
 

```
# /etc/vx/bin/vxdisksetup -i <replicated_disk_1>
# /etc/vx/bin/vxdisksetup -i <replicated_disk_2>
```
2. Create a disk group for the complex workload data.
 

```
# vxdg -s init <cvm_dg_name> <replicated_disk_1>\
<replicated_disk_2>
```
3. Create Serviceguard Disk Group MNP packages for the disk groups with a unique name in the cluster.
 

```
# cfsdgadm add <cvm_dg_name><cvm_dg_pkg_name> all=sw\
<node1><node2>
```

where *node1* and *node2* are the nodes in the Source Disk Site.

4. Activate the CVM disk group in the Source Disk Site CFS sub-cluster.

```
# cfsdgadm activate <cvm_dg_name>
```

5. Create a volume from the disk group

```
# vxassist -g <cvm_dg_name> make <cvm_dg_vol_name> 4500m
```

- 
6. **NOTE:** Skip the following steps if you want to use the storage devices as raw CVM volumes.
- 

To configure the storage devices using CFS, do:

Create a file system using the created volume

```
# newfs -F vxfs \  
/dev/vx/rdsk/<cvm_dg_name>/<cvm_dg_vol_name>
```

7. Create mount points for the complex workload data and set appropriate permissions

```
# mkdir /cfs  
# chmod 775 /cfs  
# mkdir /cfs/<cvm_dg_name>
```

8. Create the Mount Point MNP package with a unique name in the cluster

```
# cfsmntadm add <cvm dg name> <cvm_dg_vol_name> \  
/cfs/<cvm_dg_name> <cfs_mount_point_pkg_name> all=rw \  
<node1><node2>
```

where *node1* and *node2* are the nodes in the Source Disk Site.

## Configuring the storage device for complex workload at the target disk site using SG SMS CFS or CVM

To import CVM disk groups on the nodes in the target disk site and to create CFS disk group and mount point MNP packages:

1. From the CVM master node at the target disk site, import the disk groups used by the complex workload.

```
# vxdg -stfC import <cvm_dg_name>
```

2. Create Serviceguard disk group MNP packages for the disk groups with a unique name in the cluster

```
# cfsdgadm add <cvm_dg_name><cvm_dg_pkg_name> all=sw\  
<node 1> <node 2>
```

Where *node1* and *node2* are the nodes at the target disk site

3. Activate the complex workload disk groups in the CFS sub-cluster.

```
# cfsdgadm activate <cvm_dg_name>
```

- 
4. **NOTE:** Skip the following steps if you want to use the storage devices as raw CVM volumes.
- 

Create the mount point directories for the complex workload cluster file systems

```
# mkdir /cfs  
# chmod 775 /cfs  
# mkdir /cfs/<cvm_dg_name>
```

5. Create the Mount Point MNP package with a unique name in the cluster.

```
# cfsmntadm add <cvm_dg_name><cvm_dg_vol_name>\  
<cvm_dg_name> /cfs/<cfs_mount_point_pkg_name> all=rw\  
<node1> <node2>
```



Where *node1* and *node2* are the nodes at the target disk site.

6. Mount the cluster file systems in this CFS sub-cluster.

```
# cfsmount /cfs/<cvm_dg_name>
```

# G Configuration rules for using modular style packages in Continentalclusters

Table 9 (page 114) summarizes the rules to use modular style packages for various Continentalclusters entities.

**Table 9 Configuration rules for using Modular style packages in Continentalclusters packages**

Continentalclusters Package Type	Continuous Access P9000 or XP	Continuous Access EVA	Continuous Access SRDF	3PAR Remote Copy	Logical Replication
Monitor Package	Use supplied modular package template. No Continentalclusters Specific module required.	Use supplied modular package template. No Continentalclusters Specific module required.	Use supplied modular package template. No Continentalclusters Specific module required.	Use supplied modular package template. No Continentalclusters Specific module required.	Use supplied modular package template. No Continentalclusters Specific module required.
Primary package	Use dts/ccxpca module along with any other application specific modules	Use dts/cccaeva module along with any other application specific modules	Use dts/ccsrdf module along with any other application specific modules	Use dts/cc3parrc module along with any other application specific modules	Use any Serviceguard supported module. No Continentalclusters specific module required.
Recovery package	Use dts/ccxpca module along with any other application specific modules	Use dts/cccaeva module along with any other application specific modules	Use dts/ccsrdf module along with any other application specific modules	Use dts/cc3parrc module along with any other application specific modules	Use any Serviceguard supported module. No Continentalclusters specific module required.
Rehearsal Package	Use all modules used to create the recovery package, except dts/ccxpca module	Use all modules used to create the recovery package, except dts/cccaeva module	Use all modules used to create the recovery package, except dts/ccsrdf module	Use all modules used to create the recovery package, except dts/cc3parrc module	Use any Serviceguard supported module. No Continentalclusters specific module required
Data Sender Package	Not Applicable				Use any Serviceguard supported module. No Continentalclusters specific module required.
Data Receiver Package					Use any Serviceguard supported module. No Continentalclusters specific module required.

# H Sample Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file

Sample Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file:

## Section 1 of the Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file

```
#####
#### ##### Continentalclusters CONFIGURATION FILE #####
#### ##### This file contains Continentalclusters #####
#### ##### configuration data. #####
#### ##### The file is divided into three sections, #####
#### ##### as follows: #####
#### ##### 1. Cluster Information #####
#### ##### 2. Recovery Groups #####
#### ##### 3. Events, Alerts, Alarms, and #####
#### ##### Notifications #####
#### #####
#### ##### For complete details about how to set the #####
#### ##### parameters in this file, consult the #####
#### ##### cmqueryconcl(1m) manpage or your manual. #####
#####
#### ##### Section 1. Cluster Information #####
#### ##### This section contains the name of the #####
#### ##### Continentalclusters, name of the state #####
#### ##### directory, followed by the names of member #####
#### ##### clusters and all their nodes. The #####
#### ##### Continentalclusters name can be any string #####
#### ##### you choose, up to 40 characters in length. #####
#### ##### The continentalclusters state directory #####
#### ##### must be string containing the directory #####
#### ##### location. The state directory must be #####
#### ##### always an absolute path. The state #####
#### ##### directory must be created on a shared #####
#### ##### disk in the recovery cluster. This #####
#### ##### parameter is optional, if maintenance mode #####
#### ##### feature recovery groups is not required. #####
#### ##### This parameter is mandatory, if maintenance #####
#### ##### mode feature for recovery groups is #####
#### ##### required. #####
#### ##### Each member cluster name must be the same #####
#### ##### as it appears in the MC/ServiceGuard cluster #####
#### ##### configuration ASCII file for that cluster. #####
#### ##### In addition to the cluster name, include a #####
#### ##### domain name for the nodes in the cluster. #####
#### ##### Node Names must be the same as those that #####
#### ##### appear in the cluster configuration ASCII #####
#### ##### file. A minimum of two member cluster needs #####
#### ##### to be specified. You might configure one #####
#### ##### cluster to serve as recovery cluster for #####
#### ##### one or more other clusters. #####
#### #####
#### ##### In the space below, enter the continental #####
#### ##### cluster name, then enter a cluster name for #####
#### ##### every member cluster, followed by the names #####
#### ##### of all the nodes in that cluster. Following #####
#### ##### the node names, enter the name of a monitor #####
#### ##### package that will run the continental #####
#### ##### cluster monitoring software on that cluster. #####
#### ##### It is strongly recommended that you use the #####
#### ##### same name for the monitoring package on all #####
#### ##### clusters; "ccmonpkg" is suggested. #####
#### ##### Monitoring of the recovery cluster by the #####
#### ##### primary cluster is optional. If you do not #####
```

```

#### #### wish to monitor the recovery cluster, you #### ####
#### #### must delete or comment out the #### ####
#### #### MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME and MONITOR_INTERVAL #### ####
#### #### lines that follow the name of the primary #### ####
#### #### cluster. #### ####
#### #### After the monitor package name, enter a #### ####
#### #### monitor interval, specifying a number of #### ####
#### #### minutes and/or seconds. The default is 60 #### ####
#### #### seconds, the minimum is 30 seconds, and the #### ####
#### #### maximum is 5 minutes. #### ####
#### ####
#### #### CLUSTER_NAME westcoast #### ####
#### #### CLUSTER_DOMAIN westnet.myco.com #### ####
#### #### NODE_NAME system1 #### ####
#### #### NODE_NAME system2 #### ####
#### #### MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME ccmopkg #### ####
#### #### MONITOR_INTERVAL 1 MINUTE 30 SECONDS #### ####
#### ####
#### #### CLUSTER_NAME eastcoast #### ####
#### #### CLUSTER_DOMAIN eastnet.myco.com #### ####
#### #### NODE_NAME system3 #### ####
#### #### NODE_NAME system4 #### ####
#### #### MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME ccmopkg #### ####
#### #### MONITOR_INTERVAL 1 MINUTE 30 SECONDS #### ####
#### ####
#### #### CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_NAME ccluster1 #### ####
#### #### CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_STATE_DIR #### ####
#### #### CLUSTER_NAME #### ####
#### #### CLUSTER_DOMAIN #### ####
#### #### NODE_NAME #### ####
#### #### NODE_NAME #### ####
#### #### MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME ccmopkg #### ####
#### #### MONITOR_INTERVAL 60 SECONDS #### ####
#### #### CLUSTER_NAME #### ####
#### #### CLUSTER_DOMAIN #### ####
#### #### NODE_NAME #### ####
#### #### NODE_NAME #### ####
#### #### MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME ccmopkg #### ####
#### #### MONITOR_INTERVAL 60 SECONDS #### ####

```

## Section 2 of the Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file

```

#####
#### #### Section 2. Recovery Groups #### ####
#### #### This section defines recovery groups--sets #### ####
#### #### of ServiceGuard packages that are ready to #### ####
#### #### recover applications in case of cluster #### ####
#### #### failure. Recovery groups allow one cluster #### ####
#### #### in the Continentalclusters configuration to #### ####
#### #### back up another member cluster's packages. #### ####
#### #### You create a separate recovery group for #### ####
#### #### every ServiceGuard package that #### ####
#### #### started on the recovery cluster when the #### ####
#### #### cmrecovercl(1m) command is issued. #### ####
#### ####
#### #### A recovery group consists of a primary #### ####
#### #### package running on one cluster, a recovery #### ####
#### #### package that is ready to run on a different #### ####
#### #### cluster. In some cases, a data receiver #### ####
#### #### package runs on the same cluster as the #### ####
#### #### recovery package, and in some cases, a data #### ####
#### #### sender package runs on the same cluster #### ####
#### #### as the primary package. For rehearsal #### ####
#### #### operations a rehearsal package forms a part #### ####

```

```

#### of the recovery group. The rehearsal package
#### is configured always in the recovery cluster.
#### During normal operation, the primary package
#### is running an application program on the
#### primary cluster, and the recovery package,
#### which is configured to run the same
#### application, is idle on the recovery cluster.
#### If the primary package performs disk I/O,
#### the data that is written to disk is
#### replicated and made available for possible
#### use on the recovery cluster.
#### For some data replication techniques, this
#### involves the use of a data receiver package
#### running on the recovery cluster.
#### In the event of a major failure on the
#### primary cluster, the user issues the
#### cmrecovercl(1m) command to halt any data
#### receiver packages and start up all the
#### recovery packages that exist on the
#### recovery cluster.
#### During rehearsal operation, before starting
#### the rehearsal packages, care must be taken
#### that the replication between the primary and
#### the recovery sites is suspended. For some
#### data replication techniques which involve
#### the use of a data receiver package,
#### rehearsal operations must be commenced only
#### after shutting down the data receiver
#### package at the recovery cluster. Rehearsal
#### packages are started using the
#### cmrecovercl -r command.
#### Enter the name of every package recovery
#### group together with the fully qualified
#### names of the primary and recovery packages.
#### If appropriate, enter the fully qualified
#### name of a data receiver package. Note that
#### the data receiver package must be on the
#### same cluster as the recovery package.
#### The primary package name includes the
#### primary cluster name followed by a slash
#### ("/") followed by the package name on the
#### primary cluster. The recovery package name
#### includes the recovery cluster name, followed
#### by a slash ("/") followed by the package name
#### on the recovery cluster.
#### The data receiver package name includes the
#### recovery cluster name, followed by a slash
#### ("/") followed by the name of the data
#### receiver package on the recovery cluster.
#### The rehearsal package name includes the
#### recovery cluster name, followed by a slash
#### ("/").
#### Up to 29 recovery groups can be entered.
#### Example:
#### RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME      nfsgroup
#### PRIMARY_PACKAGE           westcoast/nfspkg
#### DATA_SENDER_PACKAGE      westcoast/nfssenderpkg
#### RECOVERY_PACKAGE          eastcoast/nfsbackuppkg
#### DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE    eastcoast/nfsreplicapkg
#### REHEARSAL_PACKAGE         eastcoast/nfsrehearsalpkg
#### RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME      hpgroup
#### PRIMARY_PACKAGE           westcoast/hppkg

```

```

#### #### DATA_SENDER_PACKAGE westcoast/hpsenderpkg #### ####
#### #### RECOVERY_PACKAGE eastcoast/hpbackuppkg #### ####
#### #### DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE eastcoast/nfsreplicapkg#### ####
#### #### REHEARSAL_PACKAGE eastcoast/hprehearsalpkg #### ####

```

## Section 3 of the Continentalclusters ASCII configuration file

```

#####
#### #### Section 3. Monitoring Definitions #### ####
#### #### This section of the file contains monitoring #### ####
#### #### definitions. Well planned monitoring #### ####
#### #### definitions will help in making the decision #### ####
#### #### whether or not to issue the cmrecovercl(1m) #### ####
#### #### command. Each monitoring definition specifies #### ####
#### #### a cluster event along with the messages #### ####
#### #### that must be sent to system administrators #### ####
#### #### or other IT staff. #### ####
#### #### All messages are appended to the default log #### ####
#### #### /var/opt/resmon/log/cc/eventlog as well as to #### ####
#### #### the destination you specify below. #### ####
#### #### A cluster event takes place when a monitor #### ####
#### #### that is located on one cluster detects a #### ####
#### #### significant change in the condition of #### ####
#### #### another cluster. The monitored cluster #### ####
#### #### conditions are: #### ####
#### #### UNREACHABLE - the cluster is unreachable. #### ####
#### #### This will occur when the communication link #### ####
#### #### to the cluster has gone down, as in a WAN #### ####
#### #### failure, or when the all nodes in the #### ####
#### #### cluster have failed. #### ####
#### #### DOWN - the cluster is down but nodes are #### ####
#### #### responding. This will occur when the cluster #### ####
#### #### is halted, but some or all of the member #### ####
#### #### nodes are booted and communicating with the #### ####
#### #### monitoring cluster. #### ####
#### #### UP - the cluster is up. #### ####
#### #### ERROR - there is a mismatch of cluster #### ####
#### #### versions or a security error. #### ####
#### #### A change from one of these conditions to #### ####
#### #### another one is a cluster event. You can #### ####
#### #### define alert or alarm states based on the #### ####
#### #### length of time since the cluster event was #### ####
#### #### observed. Some events are noteworthy at the #### ####
#### #### time they occur, and some are noteworthy #### ####
#### #### when they persist over time. Setting the #### ####
#### #### elapsed time to zero results in a message #### ####
#### #### being sent as soon as the event takes place. #### ####
#### #### Setting the elapsed time to 5 minutes results #### ####
#### #### in a message being sent when the condition #### ####
#### #### has persisted for 5 minutes. #### ####
#### #### An alert is intended as informational only. #### ####
#### #### Alerts might be sent for any type of cluster #### ####
#### #### condition. For an alert, a notification is #### ####
#### #### sent to a system administrator or other #### ####
#### #### destination. Alerts are not intended to #### ####
#### #### indicate the need for recovery. The #### ####
#### #### cmrecovercl(1m) command is disabled. #### ####
#### ####
#### #### An alarm is an indication that a condition #### ####
#### #### exists that might require recovery. For an #### ####
#### #### alarm, a notification is sent, and in #### ####
#### #### addition, the cmrecovercl(1m) command is #### ####
#### #### enabled for immediate execution, allowing #### ####
#### #### the administrator to carry out cluster #### ####
#### #### recovery. An alarm can only be defined for #### ####

```

```

####      an UNREACHABLE or DOWN condition in the      ####
####      monitored cluster.                             ####
####      A notification defines a message that is      ####
####      appended to the log file                       ####
####      /var/opt/resmon/log/cc/eventlog and sent      ####
####      to other specified destinations, including    ####
####      email addresses, SNMP traps, the system      ####
####      console, or the syslog file. The message     ####
####      string in a notification can be no more than  ####
####      170 characters. Enter notifications in one of ####
####      the following forms:                          ####
####      NOTIFICATION CONSOLE                          ####
####      <message>                                     ####
####      Message written to the console.               ####
####      NOTIFICATION EMAIL <address>                 ####
####      <message>                                     ####
####      Message emailed to a fully qualified email   ####
####      address.                                       ####
####      NOTIFICATION OPC <level>                     ####
####      <message>                                     ####
####      The <message> is sent to OpenView IT/Operations) ####
####      The value of <level> might be 8 (normal),    ####
####      16 (warning), 64 (minor), 128 (major), 32    ####
####      (critical).                                    ####
####      NOTIFICATION SNMP <level>                    ####
####      <message>                                     ####
####      The <message> is sent as an SNMP trap.      ####
####      The value of <level> might be 1 (normal),    ####
####      2 (warning), 3 (minor), 4 (major), 5 (critical). ####
####      NOTIFICATION SYSLOG                           ####
####      <message>                                     ####
####      A notice of the event is appended to the syslog ####
####      file.                                         ####
####      NOTIFICATION TCP <nodename>:<portnumber>     ####
####      <message>                                     ####
####      Message is sent to a TCP port on the specified ####
####      node.                                         ####
####      NOTIFICATION TEXTLOG <pathname>              ####
####      <message>                                     ####
####      A notice of the event is written to a user-   ####
####      specified log file.<pathname> must be a full  ####
####      path for the user-specified file. The user   ####
####      specified file must be under /var/opt/resmon/log ####
####      directory.                                    ####
####      NOTIFICATION UDP <nodename>:<portnumber>     ####
####      <message>                                     ####
####      Message is sent to a UDP port on the specified ####
####      node.                                         ####
####      For the cluster event, enter a cluster name  ####
####      followed by a slash ("/") and a cluster condition ####
####      (UP, DOWN, UNREACHABLE,ERROR) that might be detected ####
####      by a monitor program.                         ####
####      Each cluster event must be paired with a     ####
####      monitoring cluster. Include the name of the  ####
####      cluster on which the monitoring will take place. ####
####      Events can be monitored from either the primary ####
####      cluster or the recovery cluster.             ####
####      Alerts, alarms, and notifications have the  ####
####      following syntax.                             ####

```

```

#####
##### CLUSTER_ALERT <min> MINUTES <sec> SECONDS #####
##### Delay before the software issues an alert #####
##### notification about the cluster event. #####
#####
##### CLUSTER_ALARM <min> MINUTES <sec> SECONDS #####
##### Delay before the software issues an alarm #####
##### notification about the cluster event and #####
##### enables the cmrecovercl(1m) command for #####
##### immediate execution. #####
##### NOTIFICATION <type> #####
##### <message> #####
##### A string value which is sent from the monitoring #####
##### cluster for a given event to a specified #####
##### destination. The <message>, which can be no more #####
##### than 170 characters, is also appended to the #####
##### /var/opt/resmon/log/cc/eventlog file on the #####
##### monitoring node in the cluster where the event #####
##### was detected. #####
#####
#####
##### Example: #####
#####
##### CLUSTER_EVENT westcoast/UNREACHABLE #####
##### MONITORING_CLUSTER eastcoast #####
##### CLUSTER_ALERT 5 MINUTES #####
##### NOTIFICATION EMAIL admin@primary.site #####
##### "westcoast status unknown for 5 min. Call #####
##### secondary site." #####
##### NOTIFICATION EMAIL admin@secondary.site #####
##### "Call primary admin. (555) 555-6666." #####
#####
##### CLUSTER_ALERT 10 MINUTES #####
##### NOTIFICATION EMAIL admin@primary.site #####
##### "westcoast status unknown for 10 min. Call #####
##### secondary site." #####
##### NOTIFICATION EMAIL admin@secondary.site #####
##### "Call primary admin. (555) 555-6666." #####
##### NOTIFICATION CONSOLE #####
##### "Cluster ALERT: westcoast not responding." #####
#####
##### CLUSTER_ALARM 15 MINUTES #####
##### NOTIFICATION EMAIL admin@primary.site #####
##### "westcoast status unknown for 15 min. Takeover #####
##### advised." #####
##### NOTIFICATION EMAIL admin@secondary.site #####
##### "westcoast still not responding. Use #####
##### cmrecovercl command." #####
##### NOTIFICATION CONSOLE #####
##### "Cluster ALARM: Issue cmrecovercl command to take #####
##### over "westcoast." #####
#####
##### CLUSTER_EVENT westcoast/UP #####
##### MONITORING_CLUSTER eastcoast #####
##### CLUSTER_ALERT 0 MINUTES #####
##### NOTIFICATION EMAIL admin@secondary.site #####
##### "Cluster westcoast is up." #####
#####
##### CLUSTER_EVENT westcoast/DOWN #####
##### MONITORING_CLUSTER eastcoast #####
##### CLUSTER_ALERT 0 MINUTES #####
##### NOTIFICATION EMAIL admin@secondary.site #####
##### "Cluster westcoast is down." #####
#####
##### CLUSTER_EVENT westcoast/ERROR #####

```



```

#### #### MONITORING_CLUSTER eastcoast #####
#### #### CLUSTER_ALERT 0 MINUTES #####
#### #### NOTIFICATION EMAIL admin@secondary.site #####
#### #### "Error in monitoring cluster westcoast." #####
#### #### #####
#### #### CLUSTER_EVENT <cluster_name>/UNREACHABLE #####
#### #### MONITORING_CLUSTER CLUSTER_ALERT #####

```

The following is a sample Continentalclusters configuration file with two recovery pairs. Both cluster1 and cluster2 are configured to have cluster3 as their recovery cluster for package pkg1 and pkg2, and cluster3 is configured to have cluster1 as its recovery cluster for pkg3.

## # Section1: Cluster Information

```

# Section1: Cluster Information
CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_NAME sampleCluster
CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_STATE_DIR /opt/cmconcl/statedir
CLUSTER_NAME cluster1
    CLUSTER_DOMAIN cup.hp.com
    NODE_NAME node11
    NODE_NAME node12
    MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME ccmonpkg
    MONITOR_INTERVAL 60 seconds

CLUSTER_NAME cluster2
    CLUSTER_DOMAIN cup.hp.com
    NODE_NAME node21
    NODE_NAME node22

CLUSTER_NAME cluster3
    CLUSTER_DOMAIN cup.hp.com
    NODE_NAME node31
    NODE_NAME node32
    MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME ccmonpkg
    MONITOR_INTERVAL 60 seconds

RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME ccRG1
    PRIMARY_PACKAGE cluster1/pkg1
    RECOVERY_PACKAGE cluster3/pkg1'
    REHEARSAL_PACKAGE cluster3/pkg4'

RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME ccRG2
    PRIMARY_PACKAGE cluster2/pkg2
    RECOVERY_PACKAGE cluster3/pkg2'

RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME ccRG3
    RECOVERY_PACKAGE cluster3/pkg3
    DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE cluster1/pkg3'

# Section 3. Monitoring Definitions ####

CLUSTER_EVENT cluster1/DOWN
    MONITORING_CLUSTER cluster3
    CLUSTER_ALERT 30 SECONDS

NOTIFICATION TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/CCTextlog
    "DRT: (Ora-test) DOWN alert"
NOTIFICATION SYSLOG
    "DRT: (Ora-test) cluster1 DOWN alert"
    CLUSTER_ALARM 30 SECONDS

NOTIFICATION TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/CCTextlog
    "DRT: (Ora-test) DOWN alarm"
NOTIFICATION SYSLOG
    "DRT: (Ora-test) cluster1 DOWN alarm"

```

```

CLUSTER_EVENT    cluster2/DOWN
  MONITORING_CLUSTER    cluster3
  CLUSTER_ALERT        30 SECONDS
NOTIFICATION     TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/CCTextlog
  "DRT: (Ora-test) DOWN alert"
NOTIFICATION     SYSLOG
  "DRT: (Ora-test) cluster2 DOWN alert"
  CLUSTER_ALARM        30 SECONDS
NOTIFICATION     TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/CCTextlog
  "DRT: (Ora-test) DOWN alarm"
NOTIFICATION     SYSLOG
  "DRT: (Ora-test) cluster2 DOWN alarm"

CLUSTER_EVENT    cluster3/DOWN
  MONITORING_CLUSTER    cluster1
  CLUSTER_ALERT        30 SECONDS
NOTIFICATION     TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/logging
  "DRT: (Ora-test) DOWN alert"
NOTIFICATION     SYSLOG
  "DRT: (Ora-test) cluster3 DOWN alert"
  CLUSTER_ALARM        30 SECONDS
NOTIFICATION     TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/CCTextlog
  "DRT: (Ora-test) DOWN alarm"
NOTIFICATION     SYSLOG
  "DRT: (Ora-test) cluster3 DOWN alarm"

CLUSTER_EVENT    cluster1/UP
  MONITORING_CLUSTER    cluster3
  CLUSTER_ALERT        30 SECONDS
NOTIFICATION     TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/CCTextlog
  "DRT: (Ora-test) UP alert"
NOTIFICATION     SYSLOG
  "DRT: (Ora-test) cluster1 UP alert"

CLUSTER_EVENT    cluster2/UP
  MONITORING_CLUSTER    cluster3
  CLUSTER_ALERT        30 SECONDS
NOTIFICATION     TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/CCTextlog
  "DRT: (Ora-test) UP alert"
NOTIFICATION     SYSLOG
  "DRT: (Ora-test) cluster2 UP alert"

CLUSTER_EVENT    cluster3/UP
  MONITORING_CLUSTER    cluster1
  CLUSTER_ALERT        30 SECONDS
NOTIFICATION     TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/CCTextlog
  "DRT: (Ora-test) UP alert"
NOTIFICATION     SYSLOG
  "DRT: (Ora-test) cluster3 UP alert"

```

# I Sample input and output files for cmswitchconcl command

The following is a sample of input and output files for running cmswitchconcl -C sample.input -c clusterA -F Sample.out

sample.input

=====

### Section 1. Cluster Information

```
CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_NAME  Sample_CC_Cluster
CLUSTER_NAME              ClusterA
CLUSTER_DOMAIN            cup.hp.com
NODE_NAME                 node1
NODE_NAME                 node2
MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME      ccmopkg
CLUSTER_NAME              ClusterB
CLUSTER_DOMAIN            cup.hp.com
NODE_NAME                 node3
NODE_NAME                 node4
MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME      ccmopkg
MONITOR_INTERVAL          60 SECONDS
```

### Section 2. Recovery Groups

```
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME       RG1
PRIMARY_PACKAGE            ClusterA/pkgX
RECOVERY_PACKAGE          ClusterB/pkgX'
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME       RG2
PRIMARY_PACKAGE            ClusterA/pkgY
RECOVERY_PACKAGE          ClusterB/pkgY'
DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE     ClusterB/pkgR1
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME       RG3
PRIMARY_PACKAGE            ClusterB/pkgZ
RECOVERY_PACKAGE          ClusterA/pkgZ'
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME       RG4
PRIMARY_PACKAGE            ClusterB/pkgW
RECOVERY_PACKAGE          ClusterA/pkgW'
DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE     ClusterA/pkgR2
```

### Section 3. Monitoring Definitions

```
CLUSTER_EVENT             ClusterA/DOWN
MONITORING_CLUSTER        ClusterB
CLUSTER_ALERT             60 SECONDS
NOTIFICATION              TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/data/events.log  "CC alert: DOWN"
NOTIFICATION              SYSLOG "CC alert: DOWN"
CLUSTER_ALARM            90 SECONDS
NOTIFICATION              TEXTLOG /var/opt/resmon/log/data/events.log  "CC alarm: DOWN"
NOTIFICATION              SYSLOG
"CC alarm: DOWN"
```

Sample output

### Section1. Cluster Information

```
CONTINENTAL_CLUSTER_NAME  Sample_CC_Cluster
CLUSTER_NAME              ClusterA
CLUSTER_DOMAIN            cup.hp.com
NODE_NAME                 node1
NODE_NAME                 node2
MONITOR_PACKAGE_NAME      ccmopkg
MONITOR_INTERVAL          60 SECONDS
CLUSTER_NAME              ClusterB
CLUSTER_DOMAIN            cup.hp.com
NODE_NAME                 node3
NODE_NAME                 node4
```

### Section 2. Recovery Groups

```
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME       RG1
```

```

PRIMARY_PACKAGE          ClusterB/pkgX'
RECOVERY_PACKAGE        ClusterA/pkgX
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME     RG2
PRIMARY_PACKAGE          ClusterB/pkgY'
RECOVERY_PACKAGE        ClusterA/pkgY
DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE   ClusterA/pkgR1
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME     RG3
PRIMARY_PACKAGE          clusterB/pkgZ
RECOVERY_PACKAGE        ClusterA/pkgZ'
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME     RG4
PRIMARY_PACKAGE          ClusterB/pkgW
RECOVERY_PACKAGE        ClusterA/pkgW'
DATA_RECEIVER_PACKAGE   ClusterA/pkgR2

### Section 3. Monitoring Definitions
CLUSTER_EVENT           ClusterB/DOWN
MONITORING_CLUSTER      ClusterA
CLUSTER_ALERT           0 MINUTES
NOTIFICATION            SYSLOG "CC alert: DOWN"
CLUSTER_ALARM           0 MINUTES
NOTIFICATION            SYSLOG
"CC alarm:              DOWN" CLUSTER_EVENT ClusterB/UNREACHABLE
MONITORING_CLUSTER      ClusterA
CLUSTER_ALERT           0 MINUTES
NOTIFICATION            SYSLOG "CC alert: UNREACHABLE"
CLUSTER_ALARM           0 MINUTES
NOTIFICATION            SYSLOG "
CC alarm:              UNREACHABLE" CLUSTER_EVENT ClusterB/ERROR
MONITORING_CLUSTER      ClusterA
CLUSTER_ALERT           0 MINUTES
NOTIFICATION            SYSLOG
"CC alert: ERROR" CLUSTER_EVENT ClusterB/UP
MONITORING_CLUSTER      ClusterA
CLUSTER_ALERT           0 MINUTES
NOTIFICATION            SYSLOG "CC alert: UP"

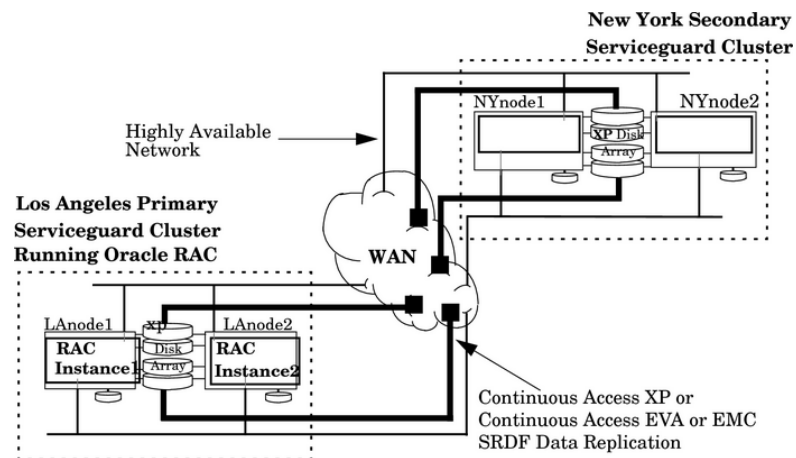
```

# J Configuring Oracle RAC in Continentalclusters in Legacy style

## Support for Oracle RAC instances in a Continentalclusters environment

When the primary cluster fails, the clients database requests are served by the support of Oracle RAC instances that are restarted by the Continentalclusters on the recovery cluster. [Figure 3](#) (page 125) is a sample of Oracle RAC instances running in the Continentalclusters environment.

**Figure 3 Oracle RAC instances in a Continentalclusters environment**



As shown in [Figure 3](#) (page 125), Oracle RAC instances are configured to run in Serviceguard packages. The instance packages are running in the primary cluster and recovered on the recovery cluster upon a primary cluster failure. [Figure 4](#) (page 126) shows a recovery using an Oracle RAC configuration after failover.

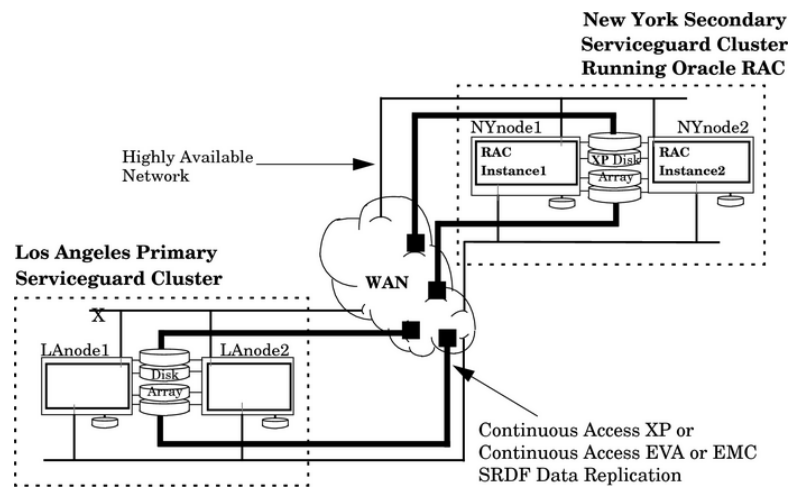
Oracle RAC instances are only supported in the Continentalclusters environment for physical replication set up using HP StorageWorks Continuous Access P9000 and XP, HP StorageWorks Continuous Access EVA or EMC Symmetrix Remote Data Facility (SRDF) using an SLVM or Cluster Volume Manager (CVM) or Cluster File System (CFS) or Automatic Storage Management (ASM) for volume management. In Continentalclusters, the Oracle RAC with ASM can be configured using the SADTA. For more information, see ["Configuring Oracle RAC database with ASM in Continentalclusters using SADTA"](#) (page 136).

Continentalclusters Oracle RAC support is available for a cluster environment configured with only Serviceguard and SGeRAC (For example, an environment running with Oracle RAC 9i, 10g or 11g).

Starting with Continentalclusters version A.05.01, recovery of an Oracle RAC instance in a cluster environment running Serviceguard and Oracle Clusterware is supported. There is a special configuration required for the environment running both Oracle Clusterware and Serviceguard/Serviceguard Extension for RAC (SGeRAC) for the Continentalclusters RAC instance recovery protection.

For more information, see ["Configuring the environment for Continentalclusters to support Oracle RAC"](#) (page 126).

**Figure 4 Sample Oracle RAC instances in a Continentalclusters environment after failover**



The Oracle RAC workloads can also be deployed in Continentalclusters using Site Aware Disaster Tolerant Architecture (SADTA). For more information on using SADTA for deploying Oracle RAC Workloads in Continentalclusters, see ["Configuring Oracle RAC database with ASM in Continentalclusters using SADTA"](#) (page 136).

## Configuring the environment for Continentalclusters to support Oracle RAC

In order to enable Continentalclusters support for Oracle RAC, there must be a set of configurations, which include either Continuous Access P9000 and XP, or Continuous Access EVA, Oracle RAC, and Continentalclusters.

To support this feature, Continentalclusters must be configured with an environment that has physical replication set up using HP StorageWorks Continuous Access P9000 and XP, HP StorageWorks Continuous Access EVA or EMC Symmetrix Remote Data Facility (SRDF) using an SLVM or Cluster Volume Manager (CVM) or Cluster File System (CFS) for volume management. For more information on specific Oracle RAC configurations that are supported, see [Table 10 \(page 126\)](#).

For complete installation and configuration information of Oracle and HP StorageWorks products, see the Oracle RAC and HP StorageWorks manuals.

[Table 10 \(page 126\)](#) provides configuration information for RAC support of Continentalclusters.

**Table 10 Supported Continentalclusters and RAC configuration**

Oracle RAC	Disk Arrays	Volume Managers	Cluster File System	Required Metrocluster
Oracle RAC with or without Clusterware	HP StorageWorks P9000 Disk Array family or HP StorageWorks XP Disk Array series with Continuous Access	HP SLVM Serviceguard Storage Management CVM	Serviceguard Storage Management Suite CFS	Metrocluster with Continuous Access P9000
	HP StorageWorks EVA series with Continuous Access	HP SLVM Serviceguard Storage Management CVM	Serviceguard Storage Management Suite CFS	Metrocluster with Continuous Access EVA P6000

To enable Continentalclusters recovery support for Oracle RAC instances:

1. Configure either Continuous Access P9000 and XP, or Continuous Access EVA for data replication between disk arrays associated with primary and recovery clusters.
2. Configure the database storage using one of the following software:
  - Shared Logical Volume Manager (SLVM)
  - Cluster Volume Manager (CVM)
  - Cluster File Systems (CFS)

You must configure the SLVM volume groups or CVM disk groups on the disk arrays to store the Oracle database. Configure the volume groups or disk groups on both primary and recovery clusters. Ensure that the volume groups names or disk group names on both the clusters are identical. You must also setup data replication between the disk arrays associated with primary and recovery clusters.

Only the volume groups or disk groups configured to store the database must be configured for replication across primary and recovery clusters. In an environment running with Oracle Clusterware, you must configure the storage used by Oracle Clusterware to reside on disks that are not replicated.

If you use CVM or CFS in your environment for storage infrastructure, you must complete the following steps at both, primary and recovery clusters.

- a. Ensure that the primary and recovery clusters are running.
- b. Configure and start the CFS or CVM multi-node package using the command `cfsccluster config -s`. When CVM starts, it automatically selects the master node. This master node is the node from which you must run the disk group configuration commands. To determine the master node, run the following command from any node in the cluster.
 

```
# vxdctl -c mode
```
- c. Create disk groups and mount points. For more information on creating disk groups and mount points, see *Using Serviceguard Extension for RAC user's guide*.

---

**NOTE:** When you use CVM disk groups, Continentalclusters does not support configuring the CVM disk groups in the RAC instance package files using the `CVM_ACTIVATION_CMD` and `CVM_DISK_GROUP` variables. The instance packages must be configured to have a dependency with the required CVM disk group multi-node package.

---

- d. Run the following commands of the CFS scripts to add and configure the disk groups and file system mount points multi-node packages (MNP) to the clusters. These multi-node packages manipulate the disk group, and mount-point activities in the cluster.
  - ```
# cfsdgadm add <disk group name> all=sw
```

 For example:
 

```
# cfsdgadm add racdgl all=sw
```
  - ```
# cfsmntadm add <disk group name> <volume name> <mount point> all=rw
```

 For example:
 

```
# cfsmntadm add racdgl vol14 /cfs/mnt1 all=rw
```
- e. Set the `AUTO_RUN` flag to `NO` with the following commands:
  - ```
# cfsdgadm set_autorun <disk group name> NO
```
  - ```
# cfsmntadm set_autorun <mount point name> NO
```
- f. Activate the disk group MNP:
 

```
# cfsdgadm activate <diskgroup>
```
- g. Start the mount point MNP:
 

```
# cfsmount <mount point>
```

---

**NOTE:** After you configure the disk group and mount point multi-node packages, you must deactivate the packages on the recovery cluster. During a recovery process, the `cmrecovercl` command automatically activates these multi-node packages.

---

- h. Set the access rights for volumes and disk groups to persistent:

```
# vxedit -g <Disk Group Name> set user=<User Name> group=<User Group> set mode=<Permissions> <Logical Volumes>
```

This step is required because when you import disks or volume groups to the recovery site, the access rights for the imported disks or volume groups are set to `root` by default. As a result, the database instances do not start. To eliminate this behavior, you must set the access rights to persistent.

3. Configure Oracle RAC. You must configure all the database files to reside on SLVM volume groups, CVM disk groups or CFS file systems that you have configured in your environment. Ensure that the configuration of the Oracle RAC instances that must be recovered in the Continentalclusters environment are identical on the primary and recovery clusters. For more information on configuring Oracle RAC, refer to the *Oracle RAC installation and configuration user's guide*.

If you have Oracle Clusterware and Serviceguard running in your environment, you must complete certain additional configuration procedures.

4. Configure Continentalclusters.

5. Configure Oracle RAC instances in Serviceguard packages. Continentalclusters supports recovery only for applications running in Serviceguard packages. In a multiple recovery pair scenario, where more than one primary cluster share the same recovery cluster, the primary RAC instance package name must be unique on every primary cluster.

Configure the Oracle RAC instance packages on both primary and recovery clusters based on the number of RAC instances configured to run on that cluster. Ensure that the same number of Oracle RAC instances are configured on both the primary and recovery clusters. Set the `AUTO_RUN` parameter in the package configuration file to `NO`. This ensures Continentalclusters recovery protection.

In the Continentalclusters environment, the RAC database can be configured using the HP Serviceguard extension for RAC (SGeRAC) toolkit. In addition, the RAC database can be configured either as a legacy package or as a modular package. For more information on configuring the RAC database as a multi-node package, see <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> -> HP Serviceguard Extension for RAC -> Using Serviceguard Extension for RAC.

---

**NOTE:** While configuring the RAC database as a modular package, do not use the pre-integrated physical replication modules, such as `ccxpca`, `cccaeva`, and `ccsrdf`.

---

6. Set up the environment file. Instead of one environment file for every Continentalclusters application package, there is only one environment file for every set of Oracle RAC instance packages accessing the same database. This file can be located anywhere except the directory where the Oracle RAC instance package configuration and control files are located. Only one environment file can reside under one directory.

The value of the `PKGDIR` variable must be the directory where this environment file is located.

Be sure to place this environment file in the same path on all the nodes of both the primary and recovery clusters in a recovery pair. You must name the environment file using your package name as the prefix. For example, `<package name>_xpca.env`. You must uncomment all the `AUTO` variables in the environment file.

7. Set up the Continentalclusters Oracle RAC specification file. The existence of the file `/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config` serves as an enabler for Continentalclusters Oracle RAC support. A template of this file is available in the `/opt/cmconcl/scripts` directory.

Edit this file to suit your environment. After editing, move the file to the `/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config` directory on all the nodes in the participating clusters:



- a. Log in as root on one node of the primary cluster.
- b. Change to your own directory:  
# cd <your own directory>
- c. Copy the file:  
# cp /opt/cmconcl/scripts/ccrac.config ccrac.config.mycopy
- d. Edit the file ccrac.config.mycopy to suit your environment.

The following parameters must be edited:

CCRAC\_ENV - fully qualified Metrocluster environment file name. This file naming convention is required by the Metrocluster software. It must be appended with <DataReplication>.env where <DataReplication> is the name of the data replication scheme being used. See the Metrocluster documents for the environment file naming convention.

This parameter is mandatory

CCRAC\_SLVM\_VGS - SLVM volume groups configured for the device specified in the above environment file for variable DEVICE\_GROUP. These are the volume groups used by the associated RAC instance packages. It is important that all of the volume groups configured for the specified DEVICE\_GROUP are listed. If only partial of the configured volume groups are listed, the device will not be prepared properly and the storage will result in an inconsistent state.

This parameter is mandatory when SLVM volume groups are used. This parameter must not be declared when only CVM disk groups are used.

CCRAC\_CVM\_DGS - CVM disk groups configured for the device specified in the above environment file for variable DEVICE\_GROUP. These are the disk groups used by the associated RAC instance packages. It is important that all of the disk groups configured for the specified DEVICE\_GROUP are listed. If configured disk groups are partially listed, the device will not be prepared properly and the storage results in an inconsistent state.

This parameter is mandatory when CVM disk groups or CFS file systems are used. This parameter cannot be declared when SLVM volume groups are used.

CCRAC\_INSTANCE\_PKGS - the names of the configured RAC instance packages accessing in parallel the database stored in the specified volume groups.

This parameter is mandatory.

CCRAC\_CLUSTER - Serviceguard cluster name configured as the primary cluster of the corresponding RAC instance package set.

This parameter is mandatory.

CCRAC\_ENV\_LOG - logfile specification for the storage preparation output.

This parameter is optional. If not specified, \${CCRAC\_ENV}.log used. Sample setup:

```
CCRAC_ENV[0]=/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/db1/db1EnvFile_xpca.env
```

```
CCRAC_SLVM_VGS[0]=ccracvg1 ccracvg2
```

```
CCRAC_INSTANCE_PKGS[0]=ccracPkg1 ccracPkg2
```

```
CCRAC_CLUSTER[0]=PriCluster1
```

```
CCRAC_ENV_LOG[0]=/tmp/db1_prep.log
```

(Multiple values for CCRAC\_SLVM\_VGS and CCRAC\_INSTANCE\_PKGS must be separated by space).

If multiple sets of Oracle instances accessing different databases are configured in your environment, and require Continentalclusters recovery support, repeat this set of parameters with an incremented index. For Example,

```
CCRAC_ENV[0]=/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/db1/db1EnvFile_xpca.env
CCRAC_SLVM_VGS[0]=ccracvg1
ccracvg2CCRAC_INSTANCE_PKGS[0]=ccracPkg1
ccracPkg2CCRAC_CLUSTER[0]=PriCluster1
CCRAC_ENV_LOG[0]=/tmp/db1_prep.log
CCRAC_ENV[1]=/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/db2/db2EnvFile_srdf.env
CCRAC_CVM_DGS[1]=racdg01 racdg02
CCRAC_INSTANCE_PKGS[1]=ccracPkg3 ccrac
Pkg4CCRAC_CLUSTER[1]=PriCluster2
CCRAC_ENV_LOG[1]=/tmp/db2_prep.log
CCRAC_ENV[2]=/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/db3/db3EnvFile_xpca.env
CCRAC_SLVM_VGS[2]=ccracvg5 ccracvg6
CCRAC_INSTANCE_PKGS[2]=ccracPkg5 ccracPkg6
CCRAC_CLUSTER[2]=PriCluster2
```

- e. Copy the edited file to the final directory:

```
# cp ccrac.config.mycopy /etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config
```

- f. Copy file /etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config to all the other nodes of the cluster.
- g. Log in as root on one node of the recovery cluster and repeat steps "b" through "f". If the recovery cluster is configured to recover the Oracle RAC instances for more than one primary cluster, the ccrac.config file on the recovery cluster must contain information for all the primary clusters.

- 8. Configure Continentalclusters Recovery Group for Oracle RAC instance. If you are using an individual package for every RAC instance, define one recovery group for every Oracle RAC instance recovery. The PRIMARY\_PACKAGE specified for the Oracle RAC instance recovery group is the name of the instance package configured in the primary cluster. The RECOVERY\_PACKAGE specified for the RAC instance recovery group is the corresponding instance package name configured on the recovery cluster. For Example:

```
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME          instanceRG1
PRIMARY_PACKAGE              ClusterA/instancepkg1
RECOVERY_PACKAGE            ClusterB/instancepkg1'
```

```
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME          instanceRG2
PRIMARY_PACKAGE              ClusterA/instancepkg2
RECOVERY_PACKAGE            ClusterB/instancepkg2'
```

The packages instancepkg1 and instancepkg2 are configured to run in the primary cluster "ClusterA". The packages instancepkg1' and instancepkg2' are configured to be restarted or recovered on the recovery cluster "ClusterB" upon primary cluster failure.

If you are using one multi-node package to package all the RAC instances, define only one recovery group for the RAC MNP Package. For example:

```
RECOVERY_GROUP_NAME          manufacturing_recovery
PRIMARY_PACKAGE              ClusterA/man_rac_mnp
RECOVERY_PACKAGE            ClusterB/man_rac_mnp
```

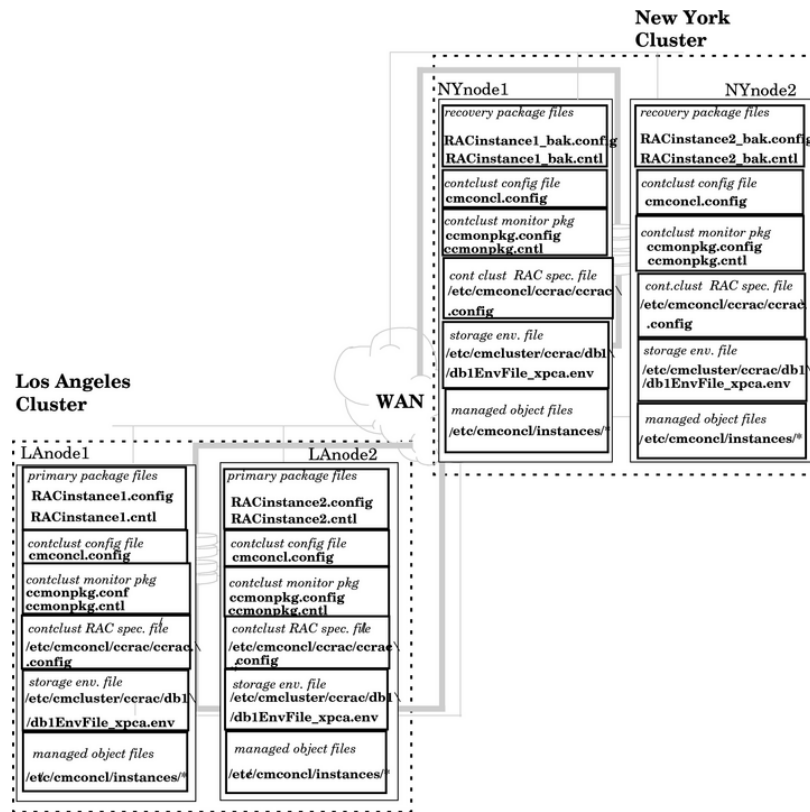
When recovering a recovery group with multi-node packages, Continentalclusters starts an instance in every cluster node configured in the MNP.

After editing the Continentalclusters configuration file to add in the recovery group specification for Oracle RAC instance packages, you must manually apply the new configuration by running the cmapplyconcl command.

When you finish configuring a recovery pair with RAC support, your systems must have sets of files similar to those shown in [Figure 5](#).

**NOTE:** If you are configuring Oracle RAC instances in Serviceguard packages in a CFS or CVM environment, do not specify the `CVM_DISK_GROUPS`, and `CVM_ACTIVATION_CMD` fields in the package control scripts as CVM disk group manipulation is addressed by the disk group multi node package.

**Figure 5 Continentalclusters configuration files in a recovery pair with RAC support**



**NOTE:** Starting from Continentalclusters Version A.08.00, there are no managed object files in the `/etc/cmconcl/instances` directory.

## Serviceguard/Serviceguard extension for RAC and Oracle Clusterware configuration

The following configurations are required for Continentalclusters RAC instance recovery support for the cluster environment that has with Serviceguard/Serviceguard Extension for RAC and CRS (Oracle Cluster Software):

1. The Oracle RAC environment having Serviceguard/Serviceguard Extension for RAC and Oracle Cluster Software must follow all the recommendations listed in the Serviceguard and SGeRAC manuals for running with CRS (Oracle Cluster Software).
2. At start up, CRS must not automatically activate the volume groups that are configured for the database. The file `/var/opt/oracle/oravg.conf` must not exist on any node of the primary and recovery cluster.
3. The CRS storage (OCR and voting disk) must be configured on a separate volume group that is separate from the databases which are accessed by the RAC instances.
4. The RAC instance attribute `AUTO_START` listed in the CRS service profile must be set to 2 on both primary and recovery clusters so that the instance does not automatically start when the node rejoins the cluster. Log in as the *oracle administrator* and change the attribute value:

- a. Generate the resource profile.
 

```
# crs_stat -p instance_name >
$CRS_HOME/crs/public/instance_name.cap
```
- b. Edit the resource profile and set AUTO\_START value to 2.
- c. Register the value.
 

```
# crs_register -u instance_name
```
- d. Verify the value.
 

```
# crs_stat -p instance_name
```

## Initial startup of Oracle RAC instance in a Continentalclusters environment

To ensure that the disk array is ready for access in shared mode for the Oracle RAC instances, HP recommends that you run the Continentalclusters tool `/opt/cmconcl/bin/ccrac_mgmt.ksh` to initially startup the configured instance packages. This tool ensures that the configured disk array is ready in writable mode for shared access before starting up the RAC instance packages. If this tool is not used, manually verify to ensure the storage is ready in writable and shared access mode before starting the RAC instance packages.

---

**NOTE:** HP recommends that `ccrac_mgmt.ksh` be used for the initial startup of the RAC instance package, or for failing back the RAC instance packages. This tool must not be used at the recovery site for recovering RAC instance packages, instead `cmrecovercl` must be used.

---

After the initial startup, use the Serviceguard commands `cmhaltpkg`, `cmrunpkg`, `cmmodpkg` as required to halt and restart the packages in the primary cluster.

To startup the Oracle RAC instance packages on any node of the primary cluster:

1. If the cluster is running with Serviceguard and Oracle CRS, ensure that the CRS daemons and the required Oracle services, such as listener, GSD, ONS, and VIP are up and running on all the nodes the RAC database instances are configured to run.
2. Ensure the `/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config` file exists and was edited to contain the appropriate information.
3. To start all the RAC instance packages configured to run as primary packages on the local cluster.

```
# /opt/cmconcl/bin/ccrac_mgmt.ksh start
```

To start a *specific* set of RAC instance packages.

```
# /opt/cmconcl/bin/ccrac_mgmt.ksh -i <indexNumber> start
```

*<IndexNumber>* is the index used in the `/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config` file for the target set of the Oracle RAC instance packages.

4. To stop all the RAC instance packages configured to run as primary packages on the local cluster.

```
# /opt/cmconcl/bin/ccrac_mgmt.ksh stop
```

To stop a *specific* set of RAC instance packages.

```
# /opt/cmconcl/ccrac_mgmt.ksh -i <indexNumber> stop
```

*<IndexNumber>* is the index used in the `/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config` file for the target set of the Oracle RAC instance packages.

## Failover of Oracle RAC instances to the recovery site

Upon a disaster that disables the primary cluster, to start up a Continentalclusters recovery process, run the following command:

```
# cmrecovercl
```

For the cluster environment having Serviceguard and Oracle Clusterware, confirm that the Clusterware daemons and the required Oracle services, such as listener, GSD, ONS, and VIP, are

started on all the nodes, which the database instance are configured to run before initiating the recovery process.

If you have configured CFS or CVM in your environment, ensure the following:

- The `SG-CFS-PKG` (system multi-node package) is up and running.  
The `SG-CFS-PKG` package is not part of the `continentalclusters` configuration.
- The `cmrecovercl` command is run from the CVM master node. Use the following command to find out the CVM master node:

```
# vxdctl -c mode
```

Starting with `Continentalclusters A.07.00`, recovery groups of applications using CFS or CVM can be recovered by running the `cmrecovercl` command from any node at the recovery cluster.

---

**NOTE:** Ensure that the primary site is unavailable and all of the Oracle RAC instance packages are not running in the primary cluster before initiating the recovery process.

---

The `Continentalclusters` command, `cmrecovercl` prepares the configured storage for Oracle RAC instances shared access only when the file `/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config` exists. If this file does not exist, the configured storage is not prepared for shared access before recovering the Oracle RAC instance packages. As a result, if `Continentalclusters` recovery group configuration includes Oracle RAC instance packages, these packages do not start or operate successfully.

The recovery process will startup the configured Oracle RAC instance packages as well as other application packages configured in the `Continentalclusters` environment.

If the `Continentalclusters` Oracle RAC support is enabled (that is, the `/etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config` file exists), when the command `cmrecovercl` is invoked and confirmations are required for the process to proceed, the following messages are displayed:

```
WARNING: This command will take over for the primary cluster LAcluster
by starting the recovery package on the recovery cluster NYcluster. You
must follow your site disaster recovery procedure to ensure that the
primary packages on LAcluster are not running and that recovery on
NYcluster is necessary. Continuing with this command while the
applications are running on the primary cluster might result in data
corruption.
```

```
Are you sure that the primary packages are not running and will not
come back, and are you certain that you want to start the recovery
packages [y/n]? y
```

```
cmrecovercl: Attempting to recover Recovery Groups from cluster
LAcluster.
```

```
NOTE: The configuration file /etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config for cluster
shared storage recovery exists. Data storage specified in the file for
this cluster prepared for this recovery process. If you choose "n" -
not to prepare the storage for this recovery process, ensure that the
required storage for this recovery process has been properly prepared.
Is this what you intend to do [y/n]? y
```

The Oracle RAC instance package can be started in sequence.

```
# cmrecovercl -g <recoverygroupname>
```

The option `-g` is used to start up the first instance package, wait until the disk arrays are synchronized before starting up the second instance package.

If the option `-g` is used with the command `cmrecovercl`, the following messages are displayed:

```
WARNING: This command will take over for the primary cluster
primary_cluster by starting the recovery package on the recovery cluster
secondary_cluster. You must follow your site disaster recovery procedure
to ensure that the primary packages on primary_cluster are not running
```

and that recovery on secondary\_cluster is necessary. Continuing with this command while the applications are running on the primary cluster might result in data corruption.

Are you sure that the primary packages are not running and will not come back, and are you certain that you want to start the recovery packages [y/n]? y

cmrecovercl: Attempting to recover RecoveryGroup subsrecovery1 on cluster secondary\_cluster

NOTE: The configuration file /etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config for cluster shared storage recovery exists. If the primary package in the target group is configured within this file, the corresponding data storage prepared before starting the recovery package. If you choose "n" - not to prepare the storage for this recovery process, ensure that the required storage for the recovery package has been properly prepared.

Is this what you intend to do [y/n]? y

Enabling recovery package racp-cfs on recovery cluster secondary\_cluster

Running package racp-cfs\

Running package racp-cfs on node atlanta

Successfully started package racp-cfs on node atlanta

Running package racp-cfs on node miami

Successfully started package racp-cfs on node miami

Successfully started package racp-cfs.

cmrecovercl: Completed recovery process for every recovery group.

Recovery packages have been started. Use cmviewcl or verify package log file to verify that the recovery packages are successfully started.

These message prompts can be disabled by running the cmrecovercl command with the option -y.

If you have configured the Oracle RAC instance package such that there is one instance for every package, the instance or recovery group can be recovered individually. If you have configured all instances as a single multi-node package (MNP), recovering the recovery group of this package starts all instances.

---

**NOTE:** At the recovery time, Continentalclusters is responsible for recovering the configured Oracle RAC instance packages. The data integrity and currency at the recovery site are based on the data replication configuration in the Oracle environment.

---

## Failback of Oracle RAC instances after a failover

After failover, the configured disk array at the old recovery cluster becomes the primary storage of the database. The Oracle RAC instances are running at the recovery cluster after a successful recovery.

Before failing back the Oracle RAC instances, ensure that the data in the original primary site disk array is in an appropriate state. Follow the disk array specific procedures for data resynchronization between two clusters, and the Oracle RAC failback procedures before restarting the instance.

---

**NOTE:** Ensure the AUTO\_RUN flag for all the configured Continentalclusters packages is disabled before restarting the cluster.

---

To failback the Oracle RAC instances to the primary cluster:

1. Fix the problems that caused the primary site failure.
2. Stop the Oracle RAC instance packages running on the recovery cluster. On any node of the recovery cluster.

```
# /opt/cmconcl/bin/ccrac_mgmt.ksh stop
```

If you have configured CVM or CFS in your environment:

- a. Unmount the CFS mount points:

```
# cfsumount <Mount Point Name>
```

- b. Deactivate the disk groups:

```
# cfsdgadm deactivate <Disk Group Name>
```

- c. Deport the disk groups using the following command:

```
# vxdg deport <Disk Group Name>
```

The recovery cluster is now ready to failback packages and applications to the primary cluster.

3. Synchronize the data between the two participating clusters. Ensure that the data integrity and the data currency are at the expected level at the primary site.
4. Verify that the primary cluster is up and running.  

```
# cmviewcl
```
5. If the cluster is running with Serviceguard and Oracle CRS, ensure that CRS and the required services, such as listener, GSD, ONS, and, VIP are up and running on all of the instance nodes. By default, when CRS is started, these Oracle services are initiated.

---

**NOTE:** Ensure that the SG-CFS-PKG (system multi-node) package is running for the CFS/CVM environment.

---

6. Startup the Oracle RAC instance packages on the primary cluster. If you have configured CFS or CVM in your environment, run the following command from the master node:

```
# /opt/cmconcl/bin/ccrac_mgmt.ksh start
```

Alternatively, you can run the command on any node in the primary cluster.

This command fails back all of the RAC instance packages configured to adopt to this cluster as the primary cluster.

To failback only a *specific set* of the Oracle RAC instance package set:

```
# /opt/cmconcl/bin/ccrac_mgmt.ksh [-i <indexNumber>] \ start
```

<indexNumber> is the index used in the /etc/cmconcl/ccrac/ccrac.config file for the target set of the Oracle RAC instance packages.

## Rehearsing Oracle RAC databases in Continentalclusters

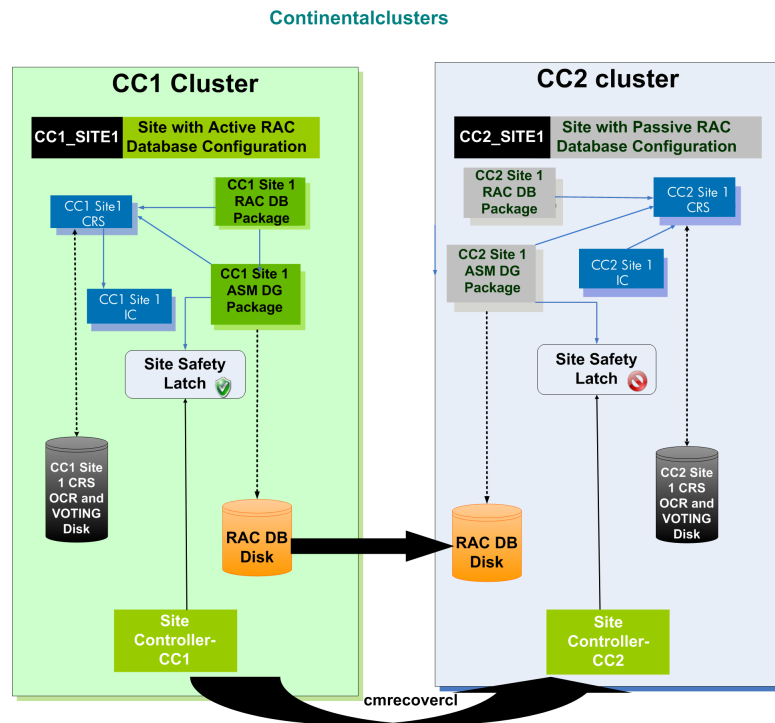
Special precaution is required for running disaster recovery (DR) rehearsal for Oracle RAC databases. For information on configuring and running rehearsal for RAC databases, see *Disaster Recovery Rehearsal in Continentalclusters* whitepaper.

# K Configuring Oracle RAC database with ASM in Continentalclusters using SADTA

Automatic Storage Management (ASM) is a feature in Oracle Database 10g and 11g that provides the database administrator with a simple storage management interface that is consistent across all server and storage platforms. In Continentalcluster, Oracle RAC with ASM must be configured using the SADTA.

Figure 6 (page 136) illustrates two Oracle RAC databases that are replicas of each other, and are configured one at each cluster in Continentalclusters using SADTA. The database workload at each cluster has its own Site Controller package and Site Safety Latch. The arrows in the Figure 6 (page 136) indicate the package dependencies. The Oracle Clusterware software must be installed at every cluster in the Continentalclusters.

Figure 6 Sample Oracle RAC database with ASM in SADTA



The CRS daemons at the clusters must be configured as a Serviceguard package using the HP Serviceguard extension for RAC (SGeRAC) toolkit in every Serviceguard cluster. The CRS Home must be installed on a file system that is local to the cluster. The CRS voting and OCR disks must not be configured for replication.

The RAC database software must be installed at every cluster in the Continentalclusters. Create ASM disk groups at the nodes in the primary cluster and configure an identical ASM disk group at the recovery cluster. The ASM disk group (ASM DG) must be configured as a Serviceguard package using the SGeRAC toolkit at every cluster.

The ASM DG package must have dependency on the CRS package on the cluster. Two replicas of the RAC database must be configured; one at the primary cluster and the other at the recovery cluster. The database must be created at the nodes in source site of the replication and the configuration and data must be replicated to the nodes in the other site.

The RAC database (RAC DB) must be configured using the SGeRAC toolkit at every site. The RAC DB package must have dependency on the CRS package and the ASM DG packages on the cluster.



This section describes the procedures that must be followed to configure SADTA with Oracle RAC database with ASM. To explain these procedures, it is assumed that the Oracle RAC home directory is `/opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/dbs` and the database name is `hrdb`.

To configure Oracle RAC database with ASM in Continentalclusters using SADTA:

1. Set up replication between the primary cluster and the recovery cluster.
2. Configure a primary cluster with a single site defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration file.

---

**NOTE:** If Three Data Center (3DC) configuration using P9000 and XP Continuous Access 3DC replication technology is being created, then the primary cluster must be configured as a Metrocluster with two sites.

---

3. Configure a recovery cluster with a single site defined in the Serviceguard cluster configuration file.
4. Install and configure Oracle Clusterware in both primary cluster and recovery cluster.
5. Install Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) software in both primary and recovery cluster.
6. Create the RAC database with ASM in the primary cluster:
  - a. Configure ASM disk group in the primary cluster.
  - b. Configure SGeRAC Toolkit Packages for the ASM disk group in the primary cluster.
  - c. Create the RAC database using the Oracle Database Configuration Assistant in the primary cluster.
  - d. Configure and test the RAC MNP stack at primary cluster.
  - e. Halt the RAC database at primary cluster.
7. Configure the Site Controller Package in the primary cluster.
8. Configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the primary cluster.
9. Suspend the replication to the recovery cluster.
10. Configure the identical ASM instance at the recovery cluster.

---

**NOTE:** Step 10 is required only for Oracle 11g R1 and 10g R2. Step 10 is no longer required for Oracle 11g R2.

---

11. Set up the identical RAC database at the recovery cluster.
12. Configure the Site Controller Package in the recovery cluster.
13. Configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the recovery cluster.
14. Resume the replication to the recovery cluster.
15. Configure Continentalclusters.
16. Configure Continentalclusters recovery group.
17. Start the Disaster Tolerant RAC Database in the primary cluster.

The subsequent sections elaborate on every of these steps.

## Setting up replication

The procedure for setting up replication is identical to the procedure for setting up replication to configure Oracle RAC with SADTA. For more information on setting up replication in SADTA for configuring Oracle RAC database with ASM, see [“Setting up replication” \(page 44\)](#).

## Configure a primary cluster with a single site

The procedure for configuring Continentalclusters with sites for Oracle RAC database with ASM is identical to the procedure for configuring Oracle RAC with SADTA. For more information on configuring Continentalclusters with sites for SADTA, see [“Configuring the primary cluster with a single site” \(page 44\)](#).

## Configure a recovery cluster with a single site

The procedure for configuring Continentalclusters with sites for Oracle RAC database with ASM is identical to the procedure for configuring Oracle RAC with SADTA. For more information on configuring Continentalclusters with sites for SADTA, see “Configuring the recovery cluster with a single site” (page 45).

## Installing and configuring Oracle Clusterware

After setting up replication in your environment, you must install Oracle Clusterware. Use the Oracle Universal Installer to install and configure the Oracle Clusterware. Install and configure Oracle Clusterware in both the primary cluster and recovery cluster. When you install Oracle Clusterware at a cluster, the cluster installation is confined in a cluster and the Clusterware storage is not replicated. As a result, Oracle Clusterware must be installed on a local file system on every node in the cluster. The Oracle Cluster Registry (OCR) and Voting disks must be shared only among the nodes in the cluster.

For every Oracle RAC 11g R2 clusterware installation, one Single Client Access Name (SCAN) is required, which must resolve to one public IP. SCAN allows clients to use one name in the connection strings to connect to every cluster as whole. A client connection request can be handled by any CRS cluster node. Since in a Continentalclusters, there are two CRS clusters, you must configure a separate SCAN for every CRS cluster.

To configure the storage device for installing Oracle clusterware, see the latest edition of *Using Serviceguard Extension for RAC* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> -> [HP Serviceguard Extension for RAC -> Using Serviceguard Extension for RAC](#)

To configure SADTA, the Clusterware daemons must be managed through HP Serviceguard. As a result, the clusterware at both clusters must be packaged using the *HP Serviceguard extension for RAC toolkit*. This configuration must be done on all the clusters in Continentalclusters. Also, ensure that the package service is configured to monitor the Oracle Clusterware. For information on configuring the Clusterware packages, see the *HP SGeRAC Toolkit README* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> -> [HP Serviceguard Extension for RAC -> Using Serviceguard Extension for RAC](#).

SGeRAC toolkit packages can be created using the Package Easy Deployment feature available in Serviceguard Manager version B.03.10. For more details, see *Using Easy Deployment in Serviceguard and Metrocluster Environments on HP-UX 11i v3* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> -> HP Serviceguard.

## Installing Oracle Real Application Clusters (RAC) software

The Oracle RAC software must be installed in the Continentalclusters, once at every Serviceguard cluster. Also, the RAC software must be installed in the local file system on all the nodes in a cluster. To install Oracle RAC, use the Oracle Universal Installer (OUI). After installation, the installer prompts you to create the database. Do not create the database until you install Oracle RAC in both the clusters. You must create identical RAC databases only after installing RAC at both clusters. For information on installing Oracle RAC, see the documents available at the Oracle documentation site.

## Creating the RAC database with ASM in the primary cluster

After installing Oracle RAC, create the RAC database in the primary cluster which has the source disks of the replication. The RAC database creation is replicated to the recovery cluster through physical replication and the identical RAC database can be configured on the recovery cluster from the replication target disks.

## Configuring the ASM disk group in the primary cluster

After installing Oracle RAC software, configure the ASM disk group for RAC database from the primary cluster which has the source disks of the replication. The ASM disk group configuration is replicated to the recovery cluster through physical replication. To configure the storage device for configuring ASM disk group, see the latest edition of the *Using Serviceguard Extension for RAC* ,

available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> -> HP Serviceguard Extension for RAC -> Using Serviceguard Extension for RAC.

## Configuring SGeRAC toolkit packages for the ASM disk group in the primary cluster

To configure Oracle RAC database with ASM in Continentalclusters using SADTA, the ASM disk group must be packaged in Serviceguard MNP packages in both the clusters. Configure ASM Disk group MNP package dependency on the Clusterware MNP package on both the clusters.

## Creating the Oracle RAC database in the primary cluster

After setting up the ASM disk group for the RAC database data files, you must create the RAC database. You can use the Oracle Database Configuration Assistant (DBCA) to create the RAC database. After you login to the DBCA, select the Automatic Storage Management option as the storage mechanism for the database and select the Use Oracle-managed files option to store database files and provide the ASM DG that you created earlier.

## Configuring and testing the RAC MNP stack in the primary cluster

To configure Oracle RAC Database with ASM in SADTA, the RAC database must be packaged in Serviceguard MNP packages in both clusters. Also, automatic startup of RAC database instances and services at Clusterware startup must be disabled. For more information on disabling automatic startup of RAC databases, see the *How To Remove CRS Auto Start and Restart for a RAC Instance* document available at the Oracle documentation site. For information on configuring the RAC database in the MNP packages, see the *Using Serviceguard Extension for RAC* available at <http://www.hp.com/go/hpux-serviceguard-docs> -> HP Serviceguard Extension for RAC -> Using Serviceguard Extension for RAC.

Configure the RAC MNP package to have dependency on the Clusterware MNP package and ASM disk group MNP package. This step completes the configuration of the RAC MNP stack in the primary cluster. Ensure that in RAC MNP package, the service is configured to monitor the Oracle RAC database. Before halting the RAC MNP stack, test the configuration to ensure that the packages are configured appropriately and can be started.

## Halting the RAC database in the primary cluster

After creating the RAC database in the primary cluster, you must halt it to replicate it on the recovery cluster. If you are using 11g R2 RAC, you must change the remote\_listener for the database before halting the RAC database MNP stack as explained in step1.

1. When using Oracle 11g R2 with ASM, the remote\_listener for the database is set to the <SCAN name>: <port number> by default. But, in the Continentalclusters configuration, the SCAN name is different for every cluster CRS. So, the remote\_listener for the database must be changed to the net service name configured in the tnsnames.ora for the database. This task must be done before halting the RAC database stack in the primary cluster:
  - a. Log in as the Oracle user.

```
# su - oracle
```
  - b. Export the database instance on the node. In this example, hrdb1 is the database instance running on this node.

```
# export ORACLE_SID="hrdb1"
```
  - c. Alter the remote listener:

```
# sqlplus "/ as sysdba"
```
  - d. At the prompt, enter the following:

```
SQL>show parameter remote_listener;
SQL> alter system set remote_listener='hrdb'
```
2. Halt the RAC MNP Stack on the replication primary cluster node:

```
# cmhaltpkg <cluster1_rac_db_pkg> <cluster1_asmdg_pkg1>
```

## Suspending the replication to the recovery cluster

In the earlier procedures, the RAC database and Site Controller packages were created at the primary cluster with the source disk of the replication disk group. A RAC MNP stack was also created in that cluster. Now, an identical RAC database using the target replicated disk must be configured with the RAC MNP stack in the recovery cluster.

Prior to setting up an identical RAC database at the recovery cluster, ensure that the Site Controller package is halted in the primary cluster. Split the data replication such that the target disk is in the Read/Write mode. The procedure to split the replication depends on the type of arrays that are configured in the environment. Based on the arrays in your environment, see the respective chapters of this manual to configure replication. After preparing the replicated disk at the recovery cluster, a storage device must be configured. For more information on configuring a storage device, see “Configuring the storage device for the complex workload at the recovery cluster” (page 51).

## Configuring the identical ASM instance in the recovery cluster

This procedure is required only if you are using Oracle 11g R1 with ASM. This procedure is not required for Oracle 11g R2. In this procedure, the primary cluster is referred as cluster1 and the recovery cluster is referred as cluster2.

To configure the identical ASM disk group for Oracle 11g R1 with ASM:

1. Create the Oracle admin directory in the recovery cluster, if it is not already created. In this example, run the following command from the first node in cluster1:

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle
# rcp -r admin <cluster2_node1>:$PWD
# rcp -r admin <cluster2_node2>:$PWD
```

2. Run the following command on all the nodes in the recovery cluster:

```
# chown -R oracle:oinstall /opt/app/oracle/admin
```

3. Copy the first ASM instance pfile and password file from the primary cluster to the first ASM instance node in the recovery cluster.

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle/admin/+ASM/pfile
# rcp -p init.ora <cluster2_node1>:$PWD
# cd /opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/dbs
# rcp -p orapw+ASM1 <cluster2_node1>:$PWD
```

The -p option retains the permissions of the file.

4. Set up the first ASM instance on the recovery cluster. In this example, run the following commands from node1 in the cluster2.

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/dbs
# ln -s /opt/app/oracle/admin/+ASM/pfile/init.ora init+ASM1.ora
# chown -h oracle:oinstall init+ASM1.ora
# chown oracle:oinstall orapw+ASM1
```

5. Copy the second ASM instance pfile and password file from cluster1 to the second ASM instance node in cluster2.

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle/admin/+ASM/pfile
# rcp -p init.ora <cluster2_node1>:$PWD
# cd /opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/dbs
# rcp -p orapw+ASM1 <cluster2_node1>:$PWD
```

The -p option retains the permissions of the file.

6. Set up the second ASM instance on the recovery cluster. In this example, run the following commands from node2 of cluster2.

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/dbs
```

```
# ln -s /opt/app/oracle/admin/+ASM/pfile/init.ora init+ASM2.ora
# chown -h oracle:oinstall init+ASM2.ora
# chown oracle:oinstall orapw+ASM2
```

7. Add the ASM instances with the CRS cluster on the recovery cluster. In this example, run the following commands from any node on cluster2:

```
# export ORACLE_SID="+ASM"
# srvctl add asm -n <cluster2_node1> -i "+ASM1" -o
/opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/
# srvctl add asm -n <cluster2_node2> -i "+ASM2" -o
/opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/
```

## Configuring the identical RAC database in the recovery cluster

Complete the following procedure to configure the replica RAC database. To explain this procedure, it is assumed that the database name is hrdb and the instance hrdb1 is the first instance on the first node and hrdb2 is the second instance on second node of the primary cluster.

To configure the identical RAC database:

1. Copy the first RAC database instance pfile and password file from the primary cluster to the first RAC database instance node in the recovery cluster.

In this example, run the following commands from the first node in cluster1:

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/dbs
# rcp -p inithrdb1.ora <cluster2_node1>:$PWD
# rcp -p orapwhrdb1 <cluster2_node1>:$PWD
```

The -p option retains the permissions of the file.

2. Set up the first RAC database instance on the recovery cluster. In this example, run the following commands from the first node in cluster2:

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/dbs
# chown oracle:oinstall orapwhrdb1
# chown oracle:oinstall inithrdb1.ora
```

3. Copy the second RAC database instance pfile and password file from the primary cluster to the second RAC database instance node in the recovery cluster. In this example, run the following commands from the second node in cluster1:

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/dbs
# rcp -p inithrdb2.ora <cluster2_node2>:$PWD
# rcp -p orapwhrdb2 <cluster2_node2>:$PWD
```

The -p option retains the permissions of the file.

4. Set up the second RAC database instance on the recovery cluster. In this example, run the following commands from the second node in cluster2:

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1/dbs
# chown oracle:oinstall orapwhrdb2
# chown oracle:oinstall inithrdb2.ora
```

5. Create the directory for the database (in this example "hrdb") that is replicated to the recovery cluster, in the Oracle admin directory.

```
# cd /opt/app/oracle
# rcp -r admin/hrdb <cluster2_node1>:$PWD
# rcp -r admin/hrdb <cluster2_node2>:$PWD
```

6. Run the following command at the remote site.
 

```
# chown -R oracle:oinstall /opt/app/oracle/admin/hrdb
```
7. Log in to any of the nodes in the remote site using the oracle user credentials.
 

```
# su - oracle
```
8. Configure a listener for the database on this site using the Oracle Network Configuration Assistant (NETCA).
9. Copy the `tnsnames.ora` file from the primary cluster CRS and modify it to fit the local environment.

In this example, the file contents will appear as follows:

```
# rcp <cluster1_node1>:$ORACLE_HOME/network/admin/tnsnames.ora
<cluster2_node1>:$ORACLE_HOME/network/admin/tnsnames.ora
# rcp <cluster1_node2>:$ORACLE_HOME/network/admin/tnsnames.ora
<cluster2_node2>:$ORACLE_HOME/network/admin/tnsnames.ora
```

10. Edit the `tnsnames.ora` file on the nodes in the recovery cluster and modify the `HOST =` keywords to suit the recovery cluster environment.

In this example, you must edit the `tnsnames.ora` file on every node in this site.

11. Register the database with the CRS on recovery cluster.

```
# srvctl add database -d hrdb -o /opt/app/oracle/product/11.1.0/db_1
# srvctl add instance -d hrdb -i hrdb1 -n <cluster2_node1>
# srvctl add instance -d hrdb -i hrdb2 -n <cluster2_node2>
```

After registering the database with the CRS on the recovery cluster, you can view the health status of the database by running the following command:

```
# srvctl status
```

## Configuring the Site Controller package in the primary cluster

The site controller package needs to be configured in the primary cluster. The procedure to configure the Site Controller Package is identical to the procedure in configuring complex workload in Continentalclusters using SADTA. For more information on configuring the Site Controller Package for Oracle RAC database with ASM in SADTA, see [“Configuring the Site Controller package in the recovery cluster”](#) (page 52).

## Configuring the Site Safety Latch dependencies at the primary cluster

After the Site Controller Package configuration is applied, the corresponding Site Safety Latch is also configured automatically in the cluster. This section describes the procedure to configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies.

To configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the primary cluster:

1. Add the EMS resource details in ASM DG package configuration file.

```
RESOURCE_NAME /dts/mcsc/hrdb_sc
RESOURCE_POLLING_INTERVAL 120
RESOURCE_UP_VALUE != DOWN
RESOURCE_START automatic
```

You must apply the modified ASM DG package configuration using the `cmapplyconf` command.

2. Verify the Site Safety Latch resource configuration at both sites. Run the following command to view the EMS resource details:

```
# cmviewcl -v -p <ASM_DG_pkg_name>
```

3. Configure the Site Controller Package in the primary cluster with the RAC MNP stack in primary cluster:

```
# site cc1_site1
# critical_package <cluster1_RAC_DB_pkg_name>
# managed_package <cluster1_ASM_DG_pkg_name>
```

---

**NOTE:** Do not add any comments after specifying the critical and managed packages.

---

4. Re-apply the Site Controller Package configuration.  

```
# cmapplyconf -v -P <site_controller_configuration_file>
```

After applying the Site Controller Package configuration, run the `cmviewcl` command to view the packages that are configured.
5. Repeat the above steps in the Recovery cluster as well.

## Configuring the Site Controller package in the recovery cluster

The site controller package needs to be configured in the recovery cluster. The procedure to configure the Site Controller Package is identical to the procedure in configuring complex workload in Continentalclusters using SADTA. For more information on configuring the Site Controller Package for Oracle RAC database with ASM in SADTA, see “Configuring the Site Controller package in the recovery cluster” (page 52).

## Configuring the Site Safety Latch dependencies at the recovery cluster

After the Site Controller Package configuration is applied, the corresponding Site Safety Latch is also configured automatically in the cluster. This section describes the procedure to configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies.

To configure the Site Safety Latch dependencies in the recovery cluster:

1. Add the EMS resource details in ASM DG package configuration file.

```
RESOURCE_NAME /dts/mcsc/hrdb_sc
RESOURCE_POLLING_INTERVAL 120
RESOURCE_UP_VALUE != DOWN
RESOURCE_START automatic
```

You must apply the modified ASM DG package configuration using the `cmapplyconf` command .

2. Verify the Site Safety Latch resource configuration at both sites. Run the following command to view the EMS resource details:

```
# cmviewcl -v -p <ASM_DG_pkg_name>
```

3. Configure the Site Controller Package in the recovery cluster with the RAC MNP stack in the recovery cluster.

```
site cc2_site1
critical_package <cluster2_RAC_DB_pkg_name>
managed_package <cluster2_ASM_DB_pkg_name>
```

---

**NOTE:** Do not add any comments after specifying the critical and managed packages.

---

4. Re-apply the Site Controller Package configuration.  

```
# cmapplyconf -v -P <site_controller_configuration_file>
```

After applying the Site Controller Package configuration, run the `cmviewcl` command to view the packages that are configured.

## Database with ASM in the Continentalclusters in the primary cluster

The procedure to start the disaster recovery Oracle RAC database with ASM is identical to the procedure for starting a complex workload in a Continentalclusters. Run the `cmrunpkg` command with the site controller package name managing the Oracle RAC/ASM workload in the primary cluster as the argument.

```
# cmrunpkg siteController1
```



---

# Glossary

## A

- application restart** Starting an application, usually on another node, after a failure. Application can be restarted manually, which might be necessary if data must be restarted before the application can run (example: Business Recovery Services work like this.) Applications can be restarted by an operator using a script, which can reduce human error. Or applications can be started on the local or remote site automatically after detecting the failure of the primary site.
- arbitrator** Nodes in a disaster recovery architecture that act as tie-breakers in case all of the nodes in a data center go down at the same time. These nodes are full members of the Serviceguard cluster and must conform to the minimum requirements. The arbitrator must be located in a third data center to ensure that the failure of an entire data center does not bring the entire cluster down. See also [quorum server](#).

## B

- BC** (Business Copy) A PVOL or SVOL in an HP StorageWorks XP series disk array that can be split from or merged into a normal PVOL or SVOL. It is often used to create a snapshot of the data brought at a known point in time. Although this copy, when split, is often consistent, it is not usually current.
- BCV** (Business Continuity Volume) An EMC Symmetrix term that refers to a logical device on the EMC Symmetrix that might be merged into or split from a regular R1 or R2 logical device. It is often used to create a snapshot of the data brought at a known point in time. Although this copy, when split, is often consistent, it is not usually current.
- Business Recovery Service** Service provided by a vendor to host the backup systems required to run mission critical applications following a disaster.

## C

- campus cluster** A single cluster that is geographically dispersed within the confines of an area owned or leased by the organization such that it has the right to run cables above or below ground between buildings in the campus. Campus clusters are usually spread out in different rooms in a single building, or in different adjacent or nearby buildings. See also *extended distance cluster*.
- cluster** A cluster in production that has packages protected by the HP Continentalclusters product.
- cluster alarm** Time at which a message is sent indicating that the cluster is probably in need of recovery. The `cmrecovercl` command is enabled at this time.
- cluster alert** Time at which a message is sent indicating a problem with the cluster.
- cluster event** A cluster condition that occurs when the cluster goes down or enters an UNKNOWN state, or when the monitor software returns an error. This event might cause an alert messages to be sent out, or it might cause an alarm condition to be set, which allows the administrator on the Recovery Cluster to issue the `cmrecovercl` command. The return of the cluster to the UP state results in a cancellation of the event, which might be accompanied by a cancel event notice. In addition, the cancellation disables the use of the `cmrecovercl` command.
- cluster quorum** A dynamically calculated majority used to determine whether any grouping of nodes is sufficient to start or run the cluster. Cluster quorums prevent split-brain syndrome which can lead to data corruption or inconsistency. Currently at least 50% of the nodes plus a tie-breaker are required for a quorum. If no tie-breaker is configured, then greater than 50% of the nodes is required to start and run a cluster.
- complex workload** Complex workloads are applications that are configured using multiple inter-related packages that are managed collectively
- Continentalclusters** A group of clusters that use routed networks and/or common carrier networks for data replication and cluster communication to support package failover between separate clusters in different

data centers. Continentalclusters are often located in different cities or different countries and can span 100s or 1000s of kilometers.

**Continuous Access** A facility provided by the Continuous Access software option available with the HP StorageWorks P9000 Disk Array family, HP StorageWorks E Disk Array XP series. This facility enables physical data replication between P9000 and XP series disk arrays.

## D

**data center** A physically proximate collection of nodes and disks, usually all in one room.

**data consistency** Whether data are logically correct and immediately usable; the validity of the data after the last write. Inconsistent data, if not recoverable to a consistent state, is corrupt.

**data currency** Whether the data contain the most recent transactions, and/or whether the replica database has all of the committed transactions that the primary database contains; speed of data replication might cause the replica to lag behind the primary copy, and compromise data currency.

**data loss** The inability to take action to recover data. Data loss can be the result of transactions being copied that were lost when a failure occurred, non-committed transactions that were rolled back as part of a recovery process, data in the process of being replicated that never made it to the replica because of a failure, transactions that were committed after the last tape backup when a failure occurred that required a reload from the last tape backup. **transaction processing monitors (TPM)**, message queuing software, and synchronous data replication are measures that can protect against data loss.

**data replication** The scheme by which data is copied from one site to another for disaster tolerance. Data replication can be either physical (see [physical data replication](#)) or logical (see [logical data replication](#)). In a Continentalclusters environment, the process by which data that is used by the cluster packages is transferred to the Recovery Cluster and made available for use on the Recovery Cluster in the event of a recovery.

**disaster** An event causing the failure of multiple components or entire data centers that render unavailable all services at a single location; these include natural disasters such as earthquake, fire, or flood, acts of terrorism or sabotage, large-scale power outages.

**disaster recovery** The process of restoring access to applications and data after a disaster. Disaster recovery can be manual, meaning human intervention is required, or it can be automated, requiring little or no human intervention.

**disaster recovery architecture** A cluster architecture that protects against multiple points of failure or a single catastrophic failure that affects many components by locating parts of the cluster at a remote site and by providing data replication to the remote site. Other components of disaster recovery architecture include redundant links, either for networking or data replication, that are installed along different routes, and automation of most or all of the recovery process.

**disaster recovery services** Services and products offered by companies that provide the hardware, software, processes, and people necessary to recover from a disaster.

## E, F

**Environment File** Metrocluster uses a configuration file that includes variables that define the environment for the Metrocluster to operate in a Serviceguard cluster. This configuration file is referred to as the Metrocluster environment file. This file needs to be available on all the nodes in the cluster for Metrocluster to function successfully.

**event log** The default location (`/var/opt/resmon/log/cc/eventlog`) where events are logged on the monitoring Continentalclusters system. All events are written to this log, as well as all notifications that are sent elsewhere.

**failback** Failing back from a backup node, which might or might not be remote, to the primary node that the application normally runs on.

**failover** The transfer of control of an application or service from one node to another node after a failure. Failover can be manual, requiring human intervention, or automated, requiring little or no human intervention.

## G

**gatekeeper** A small EMC Symmetrix device configured to function as a lock during certain state change operations.

## H, I

**high availability** A combination of technology, processes, and support partnerships that provide greater application or system availability.

## J, K, L

**local cluster** A cluster located in a single data center. This type of cluster is not disaster recovery.

**local failover** Failover on the same node; this most often applied to hardware failover, For Example local LAN failover is switching to the secondary LAN card on the same node after the primary LAN card has failed.

**logical data replication** A type of on-line data replication that replicates logical transactions that change either the filesystem or the database. Complex transactions might result in the modification of many diverse physical blocks on the disk.

## M

**Maintenance mode** A recovery group is in the maintenance mode when it is disabled. The `cmrecovercl -d` command moves a recovery group is moved into maintenance mode. The `cmrecovercl -e` command moved the recovery group out of the maintenance mode. When a recovery group is in the maintenance mode, recovery is not allowed.

**manual failover** Failover requiring human intervention to start an application or service on another node.

**mirrored data** Data that is copied using mirroring.

**mirroring** Disk mirroring hardware or software, such as MirrorDisk/UX. Some mirroring methods might allow splitting and merging.

**multiple system high availability** Cluster technology and architecture that increases the level of availability by grouping systems into a cooperative failover design.

**mutual recovery configuration** Continentalclusters configuration in which every cluster serves the roles of primary and recovery cluster for different recovery groups. Also known as a bi-directional configuration.

## N

**network failover** The ability to restore a network connection after a failure in network hardware when there are redundant network links to the same IP subnet.

**notification** A message that is sent following a cluster or package event.

## O

**off-line data replication.** Data replication by storing data off-line, usually a backup tape or disk stored in a safe location; this method is best for applications that can accept a 24-hour recovery time.

**on-line data replication** Data replication by copying to another location that is immediately accessible. On-line data replication is usually done by transmitting data over a link in real time or with a slight delay to a remote site; this method is best for applications requiring quick recovery (within a few hours or minutes).

## P

**package alert** Time at which a message is sent indicating a problem with a package.

**package event** A package condition such as a failure that causes a notification message to be sent. Package events can be accompanied by alerts, but not alarms. Messages are for information only; the `cmrecovercl` command is not enabled for a package event.

<b>package recovery group</b>	A set of one or more packages with a mapping between their instances on the cluster and their instances on the Recovery Cluster.
<b>physical data replication</b>	An on-line data replication method that duplicates I/O writes to another disk on a physical block basis. Physical replication can be hardware-based where data is replicated between disks over a dedicated link (For Example, EMC's Symmetrix Remote Data Facility or the HP StorageWorks E Disk Array XP Series Continuous Access), or software-based where data is replicated on multiple disks using dedicated software on the primary node (For Example, MirrorDisk/UX).
<b>planned downtime</b>	An anticipated period of time when nodes are brought down for hardware maintenance, software maintenance (OS and application), backup, reorganization, upgrades (software or hardware), etc.
<b>primary package PVOL</b>	The package that normally runs on the cluster in a production environment. A primary volume configured in an P9000 and XP series disk array that uses Continuous Access. PVOLs are the primary copies in physical data replication with Continuous Access on the P9000 and XP.
<b>Q</b>	
<b>quorum</b>	See See cluster quorum..
<b>quorum server</b>	A cluster node that acts as a tie-breaker in a disaster recovery architecture in case all of the nodes in a data center go down at the same time. See also <a href="#">arbitrator</a> .
<b>R</b>	
<b>R1</b>	The Symmetrix term indicating the data copy that is the primary copy.
<b>R2</b>	The Symmetrix term indicating the remote data copy that is the secondary copy. It is normally read-only by the nodes at the remote site.
<b>Recovery Cluster</b>	A cluster on which recovery of a package takes place following a failure on the cluster.
<b>recovery group failover</b>	A failover of a package recovery group from one cluster to another.
<b>recovery package</b>	The package that takes over on the Recovery Cluster in the event of a failure on the cluster.
<b>rehearsal package</b>	The recovery cluster package used to validate the recovery environment and procedure as part of a rehearsal operation.
<b>remote failover</b>	Failover to a node at another data center or remote location.
<b>resynchronization</b>	The process of making the data between two sites consistent and current once systems are restored following a failure. Also called data resynchronization.
<b>S</b>	
<b>single system high availability</b>	Hardware design that results in a single system that has availability higher than normal. Hardware design examples are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• n+1 fans</li> <li>• n+1 power supplies</li> <li>• multiple power cords</li> <li>• on-line addition or replacement of I/O cards, memory, etc.</li> </ul>
<b>special device file</b>	The device file name that the HP-UX operating system gives to a single connection to a node, in the format <code>/dev/devtype/filename</code> .
<b>split-brain syndrome</b>	When a cluster reforms with equal numbers of nodes at every site, and every half of the cluster thinks it is the authority and starts up the same set of applications, and tries to modify the same data, resulting in data corruption. Serviceguard architecture prevents split-brain syndrome in all cases unless dual cluster locks are used.
<b>SRDF</b>	(Symmetrix Remote Data Facility) A level 1-3 protocol used for physical data replication between EMC Symmetrix disk arrays.

<b>sub-clusters</b>	Sub-clusters are clusterwares that run above the Serviceguard cluster and comprise only the nodes in a Metrocluster site. Sub-clusters have access only to the storage arrays within a site.
<b>SVOL</b>	A secondary volume configured in an P9000 and XP series disk array that uses Continuous Access. SVOLs are the secondary copies in physical data replication with Continuous Access on the P9000 and XP.
<b>synchronous data replication</b>	Each data replication I/O waits for the preceding I/O to complete before beginning another replication. Minimizes the chance of inconsistent or corrupt data in the event of a rolling disaster.
<b>T</b>	
<b>transparent failover</b>	A client application that automatically reconnects to a new server without the user taking any action.
<b>transparent IP failover</b>	Moving the IP address from one network interface card (NIC), in the same node or another node, to another NIC that is attached to the same IP subnet so that users or applications might always specify the same IP name/address whenever they connect, even after a failure.
<b>U-Z</b>	
<b>volume group</b>	In LVM, a set of physical volumes such that logical volumes can be defined within the volume group for user access. A volume group can be activated by only one node at a time unless you are using Serviceguard OPS Edition. Serviceguard can activate a volume group when it starts a package. A given disk can belong to only one volume group. A logical volume can belong to only one volume group.
<b>WAN data replication solutions</b>	Data replication that functions over leased or switched lines. See also <a href="#">Continentalclusters</a> .

# Index

## Symbols

3PAR Remote Copy, 63

## A

adding a node to Continentalclusters configuration, 59

## C

cluster

continental, 95

recovery, 29

cmdeleteconcl command, 25

cmrecovercl, 29

command line

cmrecovercl, 29

configuring

additional nodes in Continentalclusters, 59

Continentalcluster Recovery cluster hardware, 29

Continentalclusters recovery cluster, 29

data replication for Continentalclusters, 19

monitoring in Continentalclusters

monitor packages in Continentalclusters, 33

Primary cluster, 29

configuring Continentalclusters

configuring, 36

configuring for Continentalclusters, 19

Continentalclusters, 42, 95

checking status, 59

configuration file, 12

deleting, 25

log files, 69

monitor package, 33

Recovery Group Rehearsal, 39

creating, 30

CVM/CFS, 125

## D

data replication, 12, 19

restoring after a disaster, 32

deleting Continentalclusters, 25

Disaster Recovery

Performing, 39

disaster recovery

Continentalclusters, 36

using Continentalclusters, 29

disaster tolerance

restoring to Continentalclusters, 32

disk

resynchronization, 63

## E

EMC SRDF with Continentalclusters

Continentalcluster with EMC SRDF, 19

EMC Symmetrix

Remote Data Facility, 63

## H

hardware for Continentalclusters Recovery cluster, 29

## L

log files, 69

## M

Maintenance Mode

cmrecovercl -d -g, 61

monitoring, 61

receiving Continentalclusters notification, 29

## N

node

adding to Continentalclusters, 59

notifications

receiving, 29

## O

Oracle Cluster Software/CRS, 131

Oracle RAC instances, 125

## P

package

worksheet, 67

package switching via cmrecovercl command, 29

power planning

worksheet, 75, 76

Primary cluster

configuring, 29

## R

RAC, 125

recovery cluster, 29

Recovery Groups

configuring with rehearsal package, 30

Maintenance Mode, 61

rehearsal package

IP address, 40, 57

replicating data, 12

RUN\_SCRIPT\_TIMEOUT, 65

## S

scripts

Continentalclusters configuration, 59

Serviceguard

cluster, 34

with Continentalclusters, 42

Shared Disk

configuration, 36

SRDF links, 66

status, 59

checking status of Continentalclusters objects, 54

switching to a recovery cluster using Continentalclusters, 29

## V

Veritas, [125](#)

Veritas Cluster Volume Manager/Cluster File System, [125](#)

Veritas CVM/CFS, [126](#)

volume groups

    creating, [30](#)

## W

worksheet

    power supply configuration, [75](#), [76](#)

worksheet, Metrocluster, [67](#)

worksheet, package, [67](#)